

ĐỀ CƯƠNG TỰ BỒI DƯỠNG DỰ THI OLYMPIC CẤP TRƯỜNG
MÔN TIẾNG ANH 8, NĂM HỌC 2024-2025
(Áp dụng từ 23/09/2024 đến 10/03/2025)

TÊN BÀI	TRỌNG TÂM KIẾN THỨC, KỸ NĂNG
Lesson 1 – Tháng 9+10	TENSES AND FORMS OF VERBS
Lesson 2 – Tháng 11	PASSIVE VOICE FORMS
Lesson 3 – Tháng 12	COMPARISON
Lesson 4 – Tháng 1	- CONDITIONAL SENTENCES - WISH CLAUSES
Lesson 5 – Tự ôn tập	TOO/ ENOUGH SO ... THAT/ SUCH ... THAT
Lesson 6 – Tháng 2	REPORTED SPEECH
Lesson 7 – Tự ôn tập	WORD FORMS AND TAG QUESTIONS
Lesson 8 – Tháng 3	THE BASIC STRUCTURES

Vocabulary: Từ lớp 6 đến lớp 8

Bà Rịa, ngày 25 tháng 09 năm 2024

GVBM

Trần Huỳnh Lân

CÁC CHUYÊN ĐỀ

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 1: CÁC THÌ CỦA ĐỘNG TỪ (TENSES OF VERB)

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 2: CÁC CỤM TỪ VÀ MỆNH ĐỀ (PHRASES AND CLAUSES)

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 3: CÁC DẠNG SO SÁNH CỦA TÍNH TỪ VÀ TRẠNG TỪ (COMPARISONS OF ADJECTIVE AND ADVERB)

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 4: CÂU TƯỜNG THUẬT (REPORTED SPEECH)

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 5: CÂU AO ƯỚC (WISH AND IF ONLY)

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 6: USED TO; BE/ GET USED TO + V-ING

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 7: CÁC KIỂU CÂU ĐỀ NGHỊ (SUGGESTIONS)

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 8: ADJ + TO V và ADJ + THAT + CLAUSE.

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 9: TỪ ĐỊNH LƯỢNG (QUANTIFIER)

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 10: CÁC LOẠI CÂU ĐIỀU KIỆN (TYPES OF CONDITIONAL)

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 11: MẠO TỪ: A, AN, THE (ARTICLE: A, AN, THE)

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 12: MỆNH ĐỀ QUAN HỆ (RELATIVE CLAUSES)

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 13: V-ING VÀ V INFINITIVE (GERUND AND INFINITIVE)

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 14: CÁC ĐỘNG TỪ KHUYẾT THIỂU (MODAL VERBS)

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 15: CÂU HỎI ĐUÔI (TAG QUESTION)

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 16: TÍNH TỪ VÀ TRẠNG TỪ (ADJECTIVE AND ADVERB)

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 17: CÁC TỪ NỐI (CONNECTIVES)

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 18: CỤM ĐỘNG TỪ (PHRASAL VERB)

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 19 : WORD FORMS

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 20: SENTENCE BUILDING+ REWRITE

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 1: CÁC THÌ CỦA ĐỘNG TỪ (TENSES OF VERB)

1. Thì hiện tại đơn (Present Simple)

a. Cấu trúc (form)

Động từ thường	To be
(+) I/ you/ we/ they + V He/ she/ it + V(s/es) (-) I /we /you/ they + don't + V He /she / it + doesn't + V (?) Do + I/ you/ we/ they + V? Does + he/ she/ it + V?	(+) I + am ... You/ we/ they + are ... He/ she/ it + is ... (-) I + am not ... You/ we/ they + aren't ... He/ she/ it + isn't... (?) Am I ...? Are we/you/they ... ? Is he/ she/ it ...?

- **Chú ý:** are not = aren't is not = isn't
 do not = don't does not = doesn't

b. Cách sử dụng (Usage)

- **Diễn đạt một hành động mang tính thường xuyên, một thói quen, hoặc hành động lặp đi lặp lại có tính quy luật.**

Ví dụ: Linda goes to school every day.

My mother usually has breakfast at 7 a.m.

- **Diễn tả một sự thật hiển nhiên**

Ví dụ: The earth goes around the sun.

Water boils at 100 degrees C.

- **Diễn tả một thời gian biểu hoặc một lịch trình** *Ví*

dụ: The plane arrives at 8 p.m. tonight.

The news programme starts at 7 p.m.

c. Các trạng ngữ thường dùng

Trong câu thường có các trạng từ chỉ tần suất như:

always (luôn luôn)	sometimes (thỉnh thoảng)
often (thường xuyên)	seldom (hiếm khi)
usually (thường xuyên)	never (không bao giờ)

Every: every day/ week/ month/ year (hàng ngày/ hàng tuần/ hàng tháng/ hàng năm) In the morning/ afternoon/ evening (Vào buổi sáng/ chiều/ tối)

d. Cách thêm đuôi s/es

Sau ngôi thứ 3 số ít, động từ được thêm đuôi "s" hoặc "es"

- Thông thường, ta thêm đuôi s vào sau hầu hết các động từ.

- Khi động từ có tận cùng bằng các âm: o, ch, sh, ss, x thì ta thêm đuôi es

Ví dụ: goes, watches, finishes, misses

□ **Chú ý:** Những động từ có tận cùng bằng "y" và trước đó là 1 phụ âm, ta phải đổi "y" thành "i" trước khi thêm "es"

Ví dụ: fly - flies; carry - carries

2. Thì hiện tại tiếp diễn (Present Continuous)

a. Cấu trúc (form)

Khẳng định	Phủ định	Nghi vấn
I + am + V-ing You/ we/ they + are + V-ing	I + am not + V-ing You/ we/ they + aren't + V-ing	Am + I + V-ing? Are + you/ we/ they + V-ing?
He/ she/ it + is + V-ing	He/she/it + isn't + V-ing	Is + he/ she/ it + V-ing?

b. Cách sử dụng (Usage)

- **Diễn tả hành động đang xảy ra tại thời điểm nói (ví dụ a, b) hoặc hành động xảy ra xung quanh thời điểm nói (ví dụ c).**

Ví dụ: a. Please don't make so much noise. I'm studying.

b. Look at the sun, it is shining brightly.

c. We learn maths every Monday afternoon, but this afternoon we are learning English.

c. Các trạng ngữ thường dùng

- Now, at present, at the moment, right now etc.

- Hoặc một số động từ như: look!, listen! Watch out! etc.

d. Các động từ thường không được dùng ở thời tiếp diễn

Các động từ trạng thái ở bảng sau không được chia ở thì hiện tại tiếp diễn khi chúng là những động từ tĩnh diễn đạt trạng thái, giác quan hoặc tình cảm.

know (biết)	understand (hiểu)	have (có)
believe (tin tưởng)	hate (ghét)	need (cần)
hear (nghe)	love (yêu)	appear (xuất hiện)
see (nhìn)	like (thích)	seem (dường như)
smell (ngửi)	want (muốn)	taste (nếm)
wish (ước)	sound (nghe có vẻ)	own (sở hữu)

Nhưng khi chúng là động từ hành động thì chúng lại được phép dùng ở thể tiếp diễn.

Ví dụ: He has a lot of books. (KHÔNG DÙNG: He is having a lot of books)

Tuy nhiên, có thể:

Ví dụ: He is having his dinner. (Anh ấy ĐANG ăn tối - hành động ăn đang diễn ra)

e. Cách thêm “ing” vào sau động từ

- Thông thường ta thêm “ing” trực tiếp vào ngay sau động từ:

Ví dụ: learn - learning; play - playing; study - studying.

- Khi động từ có tận cùng là “e”, ta bỏ “e” ở cuối từ và thêm “ing”

Ví dụ: shine - shining; live - living;

Ngoại lệ: see - seeing; agree - agreeing; dye - dyeing.

- Nếu động từ có một âm tiết hoặc động từ có 2 âm tiết nhưng trọng âm rơi vào âm tiết thứ 2 và kết thúc bằng một phụ âm nhưng đằng trước nó là một nguyên âm (e, o, i, u, a) thì phải nhân đôi phụ âm trước khi thêm “ing”

Ví dụ: run - running; sit - sitting; admit - admitting.

f. Chú ý: Thì hiện tại tiếp diễn đạt ý nghĩa trong tương lai

Khi chúng ta đang nói về những gì chúng ta đã thu xếp rồi, hãy sử dụng thì hiện tại tiếp diễn.

Ví dụ:

A: Ann is coming tomorrow morning? B:

What time is she arriving?

A: At 10.30

B: Are you meeting her at the station?

B: I can't. I'm working tomorrow morning.

3. Thì hiện tại hoàn thành (Present Perfect)

a. Cấu trúc (form)

Khẳng định	I/ you/ we/ they + have + PII He/ she/ it + has + PII
Phủ định	I/ you/ we/ they + haven't + PII
	He/ she/ it + hasn't + PII
Nghi vấn	Have + I/ you/ we/ they + PII? Has + he/ she/ it + + PII?

b. Cách sử dụng (Usage)

- Diễn tả hành động bắt đầu từ quá khứ, đã hoàn thành và có kết quả ở hiện tại (ví dụ a, b) hoặc còn tiếp diễn ở hiện tại (ví dụ c, d).

Ví dụ:

a. The teacher has just cleaned the board. (He started cleaning it some minutes ago and now the board is clean.)

b. We have already corrected all the homework. (We started correcting the homework some minutes ago and now it is all corrected.)

c. We have learned English for a year. (We started learning English a year ago and now we are still learning it.)

d. I have lived in Ha Noi since 1990. (I started living in Hanoi and now we are still living in Ha Noi.)

c. Các trạng ngữ của thì hiện tại hoàn thành.

- just (vừa mới): thường được đặt giữa have/has và PII.
- already (đã): thường được đặt giữa have/has và PII và thường dùng trong câu phủ định
- recently = lately (gần đây): thường đặt cuối câu.
- yet (chưa, vẫn chưa): thường được dùng trong câu phủ định
- yet (đã, từng): đặt ở cuối câu
- never (chưa bao giờ): thường được đặt giữa have/has và PII.
- for + khoảng thời gian: for 2 years, for a month
- since + mốc thời gian: since 2 o'clock, since yesterday, since last week, since 1990, etc

d. Quá khứ phân từ

Đối với động từ có quy tắc, ta chỉ cần thêm “ed” vào sau động từ (nếu động từ kết thúc với “e”, chỉ cần thêm “d” là đủ.)

Ví dụ: learn - learned; work - worked; live - lived.

Đối với động từ bất quy tắc: ta xem trong bảng động từ bất quy tắc.

Ví dụ: go - gone; see - seen; cut - cut; meet - met.

4. Thì hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn (Present Perfect Progressive)

a. Cấu trúc (form)

Khẳng định	I/ you/ we/ they + have + been + V-ing He/ she/ it + has + been + V-ing
Phủ định	I/ you/ we/ they + haven't + been + V-ing He/ she/ it + hasn't + been + V-ing
Nghi vấn	Have + I/ you/ we/ they + been + V-ing? Has + he/ she/ it + been + V-ing?

b. Cách sử dụng (Usage)

- Diễn tả hành động kéo dài bắt đầu từ quá khứ, đã hoàn thành ở hiện tại hoặc còn tiếp diễn ở hiện tại.

Ví dụ:

- The ground is wet. It has been raining.
- My friend has been teaching English since 1980.
- My hands are dirty. I have been working in the garage.
- You're out of breath. Have you been running?
- George hasn't been feeling well recently.

c. So sánh hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn và hiện tại hoàn thành

Present Perfect	Present Perfect Progressive
I am tired. I have written 10 letters . (Nhấn mạnh đến kết quả của hành động.)	I am tired. I have been writing letters for 5 hours . (Nhấn mạnh đến tính kéo dài của hành động.)

5. Thì quá khứ đơn (Past simple)

a. Cấu trúc (form)

Động từ thường	To be
(+) S + Ved/ V2. (-) S + didn't + V. (?) Did + S + V?	(+) You/ We/ they + were. I/ he/ she/ it + was. (-) We/you/they + weren't. I/ he/ she/ it + wasn't. (?) Were + you/ we/ they? Was + I/ he/ she/ it?

□ Chú ý:

- Đa số động từ ở thì quá khứ tận cùng bằng -ed, nhưng một số động từ quan trọng lại là động từ bất quy tắc. (Ta xem trong bảng động từ bất quy tắc để hiểu rõ hơn)
- Dạng viết tắt: Was not = wasn't; were not = weren't; did not = didn't.

b. Cách sử dụng (Usage)

- Diễn tả hành động xảy ra và kết thúc tại một thời điểm trong quá khứ.

Ví dụ:

- My brother learned English 10 years ago.

- b. I lived and worked in Hanoi in 1990.
 c. Their parents went to Ho Chi Minh city last summer.
 - Diễn tả một loạt các hoạt động liên tiếp trong quá khứ.
 When she went home, she ate a cake, drank a glass of water then she went to bed.

c. Các trạng ngữ thường gặp trong thì quá khứ đơn

- ago (trước đây)
 - yesterday (hôm qua)
 - last month, last week, last year (tháng trước, tuần trước, năm trước)
 - in + thời gian: in 1980, in 2000

d. Cách thêm đuôi ed

- **Thêm -d vào sau các động từ tận cùng bằng -ee hoặc -e** Ví

dụ: live ☐ lived; love ☐ loved; agree ☐ agreed.

- **Đối với các động từ một âm tiết, tận cùng bằng một nguyên âm + một phụ âm (trừ h, w, x) chúng ta phải gấp đôi phụ âm trước khi thêm -ed:**

Ví dụ: fit ☐ fitted; stop ☐ stopped; fix ☐ fixed.

- **Động từ tận cùng bằng -y, ta chia ra làm 2 trường hợp:**

Trước y là một phụ âm, ta biến y thành i trước khi thêm -ed: study ☐ studied

Trước y là một nguyên âm, ta thêm -ed bình thường: play ☐ played

Với các động từ còn lại, ta thêm -ed

Ví dụ: work ☐ worked; learn ☐ learned

e. Đối với các động từ bất quy tắc. Ta xem thêm phụ lục bảng động từ bất quy tắc ở cuối sách.

Verb	Quá khứ đơn	Nghĩa
Go	Went	đi
Do	Did	làm
Make	Made	tạo ra
Give	Gave	đưa cho
have	Had	có
come	Came	đến
bring	Brought	mang theo
get	Got	được, lấy
be	Was/ were	thì, là, được

6. Thì quá khứ tiếp diễn (Past Progressive)

a. Cấu trúc (form)

Khẳng định	I/ he/ she/ it + was + V-ing You/ we/ they + were + V-ing
Phủ định	I/ he/ she/ it + wasn't + V-ing You/ we/ they + weren't + V-ing
Nghi vấn	Was + I/ he/ she/ it + V-ing? Were + we/ you/ they + V-ing?

b. Cách sử dụng (Usage)

- Dùng để diễn tả một hành động đang xảy ra tại một thời điểm xác định trong quá khứ

Ví dụ:

At 12 o'clock yesterday, we were having lunch.

At this time 2 days ago, I was travelling in America.

- Dùng để diễn tả một hành động đang xảy ra thì một hành động khác xen vào. (Hành động đang xảy ra chia thì quá khứ tiếp diễn, hành động xen vào chia thì quá khứ đơn.)

Ví dụ:

He was chatting with his friend when his mother came into the room.

They were working when we got there.

- Diễn tả hai hành động đồng thời xảy ra tại cùng một thời điểm trong quá khứ, trong câu thường có từ "while".

Ví dụ:

My mother was cooking lunch while my father was cleaning the floor at 10 am yesterday. I was studying English while my brother was listening to music last night.

7. Thì quá khứ hoàn thành (Past Perfect)

a. Cấu trúc (form)

Khẳng định	S + had + PII
Phủ định	S + hadn't + PII
Nghi vấn	Had + S + PII

□ **Chú ý:** had not = hadn't

b. Cách sử dụng (Usage)

- Diễn tả một hành động xảy ra và kết thúc trước một hành động khác trong quá khứ.

Ví dụ:

- Before I moved here in 1990, I had lived in Hanoi.
- After they had seen the film, they went home.
- When we arrived at the station, the train had left.

□ **Chú ý:**

Thì quá khứ hoàn thành thường dùng kèm với thì quá khứ đơn để diễn tả hành động xảy ra và kết thúc trước khi hành động khác bắt đầu.

9. Thì tương lai đơn (Future Simple)

a. Cấu trúc (form)

Khẳng định	S + will + V
Phủ định	S + won't + V
Nghi vấn	Will + S + V?

□ **Chú ý:** will not = won't

b. Cách sử dụng (Usage)

- Diễn tả hành động sẽ được thực hiện trong tương lai.

Ví dụ: I will go to work by bus tomorrow.

- Để diễn tả một quyết định ngay tại thời điểm nói. A:

It's hot.

B: Yes. I will turn on the air-conditioner.

- Diễn tả một lời hứa.

Thank you for lending me the money. I'll pay you back on Friday.

c. Các trạng ngữ thường gặp

- tomorrow (ngày mai)
- next week, next month, next year (tuần tới, tháng tới, năm tới)
- later (sau này)
- in + mốc thời gian trong tương lai: in 2020
- Sau một vài cụm từ quen thuộc như

I'm sure ...

I think ...

I hope ...

I believe ...

Ví dụ: I think he will come next week I believe she will pass the exam.

10. Thì tương lai tiếp diễn (Future Progressive)

a. Cấu trúc

Khẳng định	S + will + be + V-ing.
Phủ định	S + won't + be + V-ing.
Nghi vấn	Will + S + be + V-ing?

b. Cách sử dụng (Usage)

- Diễn tả hành động đang diễn ra tại một thời điểm xác định trong tương lai.

Ví dụ: I will be working hard at 10 a.m tomorrow.

He will be reading a book this time tomorrow.

- Diễn tả một hành động đang diễn ra thì có một hành động khác xen vào trong tương lai.

Ví dụ: When I get back at eleven, they will be sleeping.

c. Các trạng ngữ thường gặp

- this time + thời gian trong tương lai
- at + giờ + danh từ chỉ thời gian trong tương lai: at 5 p.m tomorrow....

11. Thì tương lai hoàn thành (Future Perfect)

a. Cấu trúc

Khẳng định	S + will + have + PII.
Phủ định	S + won't + have + PII.
Nghi vấn	Will + S + have + PII.

b. Cách sử dụng (Usage)

- Diễn tả một hành động sẽ kết thúc trước một thời điểm hoặc một hành động khác ở tương lai.

Ví dụ: He will have finished his work by 9 o'clock.

Taxi will have arrived by the time you finish dressing.

By next Sunday, you will have stayed with us for 3 weeks.

12. Thì tương lai hoàn thành tiếp diễn (Future Perfect Continuous)

a. Cấu trúc

Khẳng định	S + will + have been + V-ing.
Phủ định	S + won't + have been + V-ing.
Nghi vấn	Will + S + have been + V-ing.

b. Cách sử dụng (Usage)

Dùng để diễn tả một hành động xảy ra trong quá khứ tiếp diễn liên tục đến một thời điểm cho trước trong tương lai.

Ví dụ: I will have been studying English for 10 year by the end of next month.

13. Thì tương lai gần (near future)

a. Cấu trúc

Khẳng định	I + am going to + V. You/ we/ they + are going to + V. He/ she/ it + is going to + V.
Phủ định	I + am not going to + V. You/ we/ they + are not going to + V. He/ she/ it + is not going to + V.
Nghi vấn	Am + I going to + V? Are + you/ we/ they going to + V? Is + he/ she/ it + going to + V?

b. Cách sử dụng (Usage)

- Dùng để diễn tả một dự định, kế hoạch trong tương lai.

Ví dụ: He is going to get married this year.

We are going to take a trip to HCM city this weekend.

- Dùng để diễn đạt một dự đoán có căn cứ, có dẫn chứng cụ thể.

Ví dụ: Look at those dark clouds! It is going to rain.

Are you going to cook dinner? I have seen a lot of vegetables on the table.

BÀI TẬP

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 1: CÁC THÌ CỦA ĐỘNG TỪ (TENSES OF VERB)

Exercise 1: Put the verbs in brackets: simple present or present continuous.

1. Where's John? He (listen)_____ to a new CD in his room.
2. Don't forget to take your umbrella with you to London. You know it always (rain)_____ in England.
3. Jean (work)_____ hard all day but she (not work)_____ at the moment.
4. Look! That boy (run)_____ after the bus. He (want)_____ to catch it.
5. He (speak)_____ German so well because he (come)_____ from Germany.
6. Shh! The boss (come)_____ We (meet)_____ him in an hour and nothing is ready!
7. Oh no! Look! It (snow)_____ again. It always (snow)_____ in this country.
8. Mary (swim)_____ very well, but she (not run)_____ very fast.
9. Sorry I can't help you. I (not know)_____ where she keeps her files.
10. I (think)_____ your new hat (look)_____ nice on you.

Exercise 2: Put the verbs in brackets: simple present or present continuous.

1. I (live)_____ with my parents but right now I (stay)_____ with some friends for a few days.

2. I can't talk on the phone now. I (drive)_____ home.
3. Where are the children? They (lie)_____ on the beach over there.
4. He (not understand)_____ what you (talk)_____ about. He's foreign.
5. How much your suitcase (weigh)_____? It (look)_____ really heavy.
6. Normally I (start)_____ work at eight o'clock but I (start)_____ at 7 this week. We are busy just now.
7. What's that smell? Something (burn)_____ in the kitchen.
8. I (work)_____ overtime this month because I (save up)_____ to buy a car.
9. He (smoke)_____ thirty cigarettes a day but at the moment he (try)_____ very hard to cut down.
10. We usually (read)_____ books, (listen)_____ to music or (watch)_____ TV.

Exercise 3: Put the verbs in brackets: simple present or present continuous.

1. What (do)_____ now?
2. He (water)_____ flowers in the garden.
3. At the moment, my sisters (play)_____ volleyball and my brother (play)_____ soccer.
4. It is 9.00; my family (watch)_____ TV.
5. In the summer, I usually (go)_____ to the park with my friends, and in the spring, we (have)_____ Tet Holiday; I (be)_____ happy because I always (visit)_____ my grandparents.
6. Her favourite subject (be)_____ English.
7. Keep silent! I (listen)_____ to the radio.
8. Every morning, I (watch)_____ TV at 10.00, but today I (listen)_____ to music at 10.00.
9. At the moment, I (read)_____ a book and my brother (watch)_____ TV.
10. They usually (get up)_____ at 6.00 in the morning.

Exercise 4: Put the verbs in brackets: past simple or present perfect.

1. I (receive)_____ a letter just a few minutes ago.
2. They (live)_____ in London since 1980.
3. Linda is working in this department. She (work)_____ here for two years.
4. Up to present, John (do)_____ good work in the class.
5. (they/ put)_____ their book on my desk last night?
6. He (study)_____ English at this school for six weeks up to now.
7. Nobody lives in those houses. They (be)_____ empty for many years.
8. Cindy is in her office. She (be)_____ there since 7 o'clock.
9. My sister (come)_____ to see me last night.
10. My friend George is learning Japanese. He (learn)_____ it for six months.

Exercise 5: Put the verbs in brackets: past simple or present perfect.

1. I (not/learn)_____ very much when I was at school.
2. I (have)_____ this bike since I was a teenager and I still use it.
3. John, I'm furious with you. I (wait)_____ in this rain for half an hour.
4. They (not eat)_____ meat since they (see)_____ that film about farm animals.
5. Up to now, we (write)_____ almost every lesson in the book.
6. Last year we (go)_____ to Finland for a holiday.
7. I (play)_____ tennis yesterday afternoon.
8. (you/ ever/ be)_____ to United State?
9. When I (be)_____ a child, I (not like)_____ sports.
10. Kathy loves travelling. She (visit)_____ many countries in Europe and Asia.

Exercise 6: Put the verbs in brackets: present perfect or present perfect continuous

1. I (buy)_____ a new pair of shoes.
2. (you/ finish)_____ reading that book yet? I (read)_____ but I am still at chapter 10.
3. There is only a little cake left because your dad (eat)_____ it in the past 3 days.
4. I (not/ see)_____ you for ages, how have you been?
5. I (drive)_____ for over eight hours now. I am extremely tired.
6. Sarah (lose)_____ a lot of weight lately, I hope she doesn't get sick.
7. Bryan (write)_____ seven books and they are all published.
8. Bryan (write)_____ all night and he's got 30 pages so far.
9. Gorge (find)_____ an amazing job at the local pharmacist.
10. We are out of money because your mother (spend)_____ it all.

Exercise 7: Put the verbs in brackets: past simple or past continuous.

1. I (go)_____down the street when it began to rain.
2. At this time last year, I (attend)_____an English course.
3. Jim (stand)_____under the tree when he heard an explosion.
4. The boy fell and hurt himself while he (ride)_____a bicycle.
5. When we met them last year, they (live)_____in Santiago.
6. The tourist lost his camera while he (walk)_____around the city.
7. The lorry (go)_____very fast when it hit our car.
8. While I (study)_____in my room, my roommate (have)_____a party in the other room.
9. We (sit)_____in the café when they saw us.
10. I (call)_____Mr. Wilson at 9 last night, but he (not be)_____at home. He (study)_____at the library.

Exercise 8: Put the verbs in brackets: past simple or past continuous.

1. I (not hear)_____the thunder during the storm last night because I _____(sleep)
2. It (be)_____beautiful yesterday when we (go)_____for a walk in the park. The sun (shine)_____. The birds (sing)_____.
3. My brother and sister (talk)_____about something when I (walk) into the room.
4. Tom (go)_____to his friend's house, but the boys (not be)_____there. They (play)_____soccer in the vacant lot down the street.
5. The little boy (fall)_____asleep while his mother (read)_____him a story.
6. I really (enjoy)_____my holiday last January. While it (snow)_____in Iowa, the sun (shine)_____in Florida.
7. While Ted (shovel)_____snow from his driveway yesterday, his wife (bring)_____him a cup of hot chocolate.
8. John (have)_____a car accident last week. He (drive)_____down the street when suddenly a lorry (hit)_____his car from behind.
9. Ten years ago, the government (decide)_____to begin a food programme. At that time, many people in the rural area (starve)_____due to several years of drought.
10. They (wait)_____for me when I (arrive)_____at the station.

Exercise 9: Put the verbs in brackets: present perfect or present perfect continuous or past perfect.

1. I never get up from the table before others (finish)_____.
2. It is already 9:30 pm and I (wait)_____here for over an hour. If John does not get here in the next five minutes, I am going to leave.
3. Did you hear that Ben was fired last month? He (work)_____for that import company for more than ten years and he (work)_____in almost every department.
4. I (see)_____many pictures of the pyramids before I went to Egypt last summer. Pictures of the monuments are very misleading. The pyramids are actually quite small.
5. Sarah (climb)_____Mount Everest, (sail)_____around the world, and (go)_____on safari in Kenya. She is such an adventurous person.
6. Susan (climb)_____Mount Everest, (sail)_____around the world, and (go) on safari in Kenya by the time she was twenty-five. She _____(experience) more by that age than most people do in their entire lives.
7. Before my trip to Paris two years ago, I (never be)_____to France.
8. When we finally stopped him, the squirrel (already eat)_____five cookies.
9. Ben (try)_____to open his own restaurant for the last few years. He (just finish)_____the painting, but he (not do)_____the decorating yet.
10. You look tired. How long (run)_____?

Exercise 10: Put the verbs in brackets: past perfect or past perfect continuous.

1. By 9 o'clock, we (finish)_____our homework.
2. By the end of the month I (live)_____in this town for ten years.
3. By the end of this week we (work)_____on the project for a month.
4. They (leave)_____the classroom by the end of the hour.
5. By July the fifth they (study)_____English for 3 years.
6. By 10 o'clock she (watch)_____TV for 4 hours.
7. She (sleep)_____for 10 hours by 11 o'clock.
8. We (go)_____home by next week.
9. We (look for)_____him for 40 days by next Saturday.
10. She (return)_____from the excursion by 6 o'clock.
11. (buy/ he)_____the new house by October?

12. They (wait)_____for the president for 5 hours.
13. The sun (not/ rise)_____by 4 o'clock.
14. (you/ do)_____the shopping by 3 o'clock?
15. By 2018 we (live)_____in Madrid for 20 years.

Exercise 11: Put the verbs in brackets: present simple or future simple or future continuous.

1. Right now, I am watching TV. Tomorrow at this time, I (watch)_____TV as well.
2. When you (get)_____off the plane, I (wait)_____for you.
3. I am sick of rain and bad weather! Hopefully, when we (wake)_____up tomorrow morning, the sun (shine) _____
4. When I (get)_____to the party, Sally and Doug (dance)_____, John (make)_____drinks, and Sue and Frank (discuss)_____something controversial.
5. Sandra: Where is Tim going to meet us?
- Marcus: He (wait)_____for us when our train arrives. I (be)_____sure he (stand) _____ on the platform when we pull into the station.
6. Doug: If you (need)_____to contact me next week, I (stay)_____at the Hoffman Hotel.
- Nancy: I (call)_____you if there are any problems.
- Doug: This is the first time I have ever been away from the kids.
- Nancy: Don't worry, they (be)_____be fine.
7. Samantha: Just think, next week at this time, I (lie)_____on a tropical beach in Maui drinking Mai Tais and eating pineapple.
- Darren: While you are luxuriating on the beach, I (stress)_____out over this marketing project. How are you going to enjoy yourself knowing that I am working so hard?
- Samantha: I'll manage somehow.
- Darren: You're terrible. Can't you take me with you?
- Samantha: No. But I (send)_____you a postcard of a beautiful, white sand beach.
- Darren: Great, that (make)_____me feel much better.

Exercise 12: Put the verbs in brackets: future simple or near future.

1. A: I have got a terrible headache.
B: Have you? Wait there and I (get)_____an aspirin for you.
2. A: Why are you filling that bucket with water? B:
I (wash)_____the car.
3. A: I've decided to repaint this room.
B: Oh, have you? What color (paint)_____paint it?
4. A: Look! There is smoke coming out of the house. It's on fire!
B: Good Heavens! I (call)_____the fire-brigade immediately.
5. A: The ceiling in this room doesn't look very safe, does it? B:
No, it looks as if it (fall)_____down.
6. A: Where are you going? Are you going shopping? B:
Yes, I (buy)_____something for the dinner.
7. A: I can't work out how to use this camera.
B: It's quite easy. I (show)_____show you.
8. A: What would you like to drink - tea or coffee? B:
I (have)_____tea please.
9. A: Has Greg decided on what to do when he leaves school?
B: Oh yes. Everything is planned. He (have)_____a holiday for a few weeks and then he (start) _____ a computer programming course.
10. A: Did you buy chicken?
B: Oh, no! I forgot to buy it. I (remember)_____to buy some tomorrow.

Exercise 13: Put the verbs in brackets: future simple or near future.

1. A: Why are you putting on your coat?
B: I (take)_____my dog out for a walk.
2. I bought a new book this morning. I (stay)_____at home and start reading my favorite chapter.
3. What (happen)_____to Daniel's family if he still doesn't find a job?
4. A: Why are you waking up at 2 a.m.?
B: I (watch)_____the match between Liverpool and Manchester United.
5. A: I can't hear the television!
B: I (turn)_____it up so that you can hear it.
6. A: Aw. I'm about to fall asleep. I had very little sleep last night.

- B: Oh, dear? I (get)_____you a cup of coffee. That will wake you up.
7. They are going to deliver the sofas to my flat this afternoon. I just can't handle them on my own. (you/ come)_____to give me a hand?
8. As soon as the weather's fine again, we (walk)_____down to the beach and you can take a lot of photos there.
9. A: What do you want to study after graduation?
B: I (study)_____Environmental Economics. I've always been interested since I read a book about it.
10. Eler husband found a new job in Birmingham last month. They (go)_____to the city next week.

Exercise 14: Put the verbs in brackets: future simple or near future.

- I love London. I (probably/ go)_____there next year.
- What (wear/ you)_____at the party tonight?
- I haven't made up my mind yet. But I think I (find)_____something nice in my mum's wardrobe.
- I completely forget about this. Give me a moment, I (do)_____it now.
- Tonight, I (stay)_____home. I've rented a video.
- I feel dreadful. I (be)_____sick.
- If you have any problem, I (help)_____you.
- The weather forecast says it (not/ snow)_____tomorrow
- I promise that I (not/ come)_____late.
- Look at those clouds. It (rain)_____now.

Exercise 15: Put the verbs in brackets: future perfect or future continuous.

- The plane (land)_____by the time we arrive at the airport in this slow traffic.
- Don't worry. You and I (cover)_____most of the distance by noon.
- Hopefully we (finish)_____the construction work before the end of this month.
- Erine and Brooke are planning to set off in the afternoon. I hope the weather conditions (improve) _____by then.
- My parents are going to London, so I (stay)_____with my grandma for the next 2 weeks.
- I (play)_____tennis all day long tomorrow.
- The band (play)_____when the President enters.
- This time tomorrow Anna (fly)_____to Japan. Her friends (wait)_____for her at Tokyo airport.
- At this time next year, I (study)_____in Singapore.
- I (go out)_____with friend while my husband (watch)_____the football match tomorrow.

Exercise 16: Put the verbs in brackets: future perfect or future perfect continuous.

- By this time next week, my wife (fast)_____for exactly 24 days.
- By this time tomorrow, he (work)_____at his job for one week.
- I don't know what I (do)_____when you come tomorrow, so give me a call if you cannot find me.
- Dennis and I (be)_____walking around a little later tonight.
- (you/ drive)_____to Canada tomorrow around 5 o'clock?
- By the time they decide, I (be)_____taking care of their kids for centuries.
- This summer, Nadine (reside)_____in Detroit for 25 years.
- By the time you come back, Jenna (sing)_____for commercials for the whole summer.
- My mother (probably/ be)_____cooking when we get home.
- By next week, I (see)_____my girlfriend for 1 year.

**CHUYÊN ĐỀ 2: CÁC CỤM TỪ VÀ MỆNH ĐỀ
(PHRASES AND CLAUSES)**

1. Cụm từ và mệnh đề chỉ sự nhượng bộ (Phrase and clause of concession)

a. Cụm từ

Cụm từ chỉ sự nhượng bộ thường được bắt đầu bằng giới từ 'In spite of' hoặc 'Despite'

☐ **Cấu trúc:**

In spite of/ Despite + Noun/ Noun phrase/ V-ing

Ví dụ:

Despite the bad weather, they enjoyed the picnic. In spite of his old age, he leads an active life.

☐ **Chú ý:**

Cụm từ có 'Despite' hoặc 'In spite of' có thể được đặt trước hoặc sau mệnh đề chính. Nếu đứng trước mệnh

đề chính, ta phải thêm dấu phẩy vào trước mệnh đề chính, nếu đứng sau mệnh đề chính, ta không cần thêm dấu phẩy.

Ví dụ:

She couldn't pass the exam despite studying hard.

Despite studying hard, she couldn't pass the exam.

b. Mệnh đề

Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ sự nhượng bộ là mệnh đề phụ chỉ sự tương phản của 2 hành động trong câu. Mệnh đề này thường bắt đầu với những từ nối: *although, though, even though, no matter, whatever* (dù, cho dù)

❖ *Although, though, even though*

□ **Cấu trúc:**

Although/ though/ even though + S + V

Ví dụ:

Although he is intelligent, he can't do this puzzle.

She couldn't win the beauty contest even though she was beautiful.

□ **Chú ý:**

- Đứng sau 3 cụm từ này phải là một mệnh đề hoàn chỉnh (có cả chủ ngữ và động từ).

- Các mệnh đề này có thể đứng trước hoặc sau mệnh đề chính. Nếu đứng trước mệnh đề chính, ta phải thêm dấu phẩy vào trước mệnh đề chính, nếu đứng sau mệnh đề chính, ta không cần thêm dấu phẩy.

Ví dụ:

Although the weather was cold, they enjoyed the picnic.

Jane will be admitted to the university even though she has bad grades.

Anna was fond of Jim though he often annoyed her.

□ **No matter, whatever**

□ **Cấu trúc:**

No matter + who/ what/ when/ where/ why/ how (adj, adv) + S + V

= Whoever/ Whatever (+N)/ whenever/ wherever/ whyever/ however (adj/ adv) + S + V,

Ví dụ:

No matter who you are, I love you.

= Whoever you are, I still love you.

Whatever he says, I don't believe him

= No matter what he say, I don't believe him.

□ **Chú ý:**

Mệnh đề bắt đầu bằng *No matter* hoặc *Whatever* thường được đặt trước mệnh đề chính, mang nghĩa 'dù ... đi nữa'

2. Phrase and clause of reason (Cụm từ và mệnh đề chỉ lý do)

a. Cụm từ

Cụm từ chỉ lý do thường được bắt đầu bằng: *because of, owing to, due to, as a result of, on account of, Because of*

□ **Cấu trúc:**

because of

owing to

due to

+

Noun/ Noun phrase/ V-ing on

account of

as a result of

□ **Chú ý:**

- Cụm từ thường được sử dụng nhất là *because of*.

- Các cụm từ này có thể đứng trước hoặc sau mệnh đề chính, mang nghĩa là 'vì, do'. Nếu đứng trước mệnh đề chính, ta phải thêm dấu phẩy vào trước mệnh đề chính, nếu đứng sau mệnh đề chính, ta không cần thêm dấu phẩy.

Ví dụ:

Jane was late **because of the rain**.

= Because of the rain, Jane was late.

Because of the traffic jam, the students arrived late.

The project has to be abandoned **due to a lack of government funding**.

Owing to his illness, he could not continue with his studies.

She dies **as a result of her injuries**.

b. Mệnh đề

Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ lý do là một mệnh đề phụ chỉ lý do hoặc nguyên nhân của hành động được nêu trong mệnh đề chính. Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ lý do thường được nối với mệnh đề chính nhờ các từ nối như: **because, since, as.**

☐ **Chú ý:**

- *since* và *as* thường đặt ở đầu câu khi người nghe đã biết rõ nguyên nhân hoặc nguyên nhân không quá quan trọng.

- *because* là từ nối được sử dụng phổ biến nhất

☐ **Cấu trúc:**

Because/ Since/ As + S + V

Ví dụ:

He came ten minutes late **because he missed the first bus. As the weather was bad**, they didn't take part in the trip.

3. Cụm từ và mệnh đề chỉ kết quả

a. Cụm từ chỉ kết quả

❖ **too ... to V (quá... không thể làm điều gì).**

☐ **Cấu trúc:**

S + be/ V + too + adj/ adv + to V

Ví dụ:

He is too short to play basketball.

Tom ran too slowly to become the winner of the race.

This book is too dull for you to read.

☐ **Lưu ý:** Cấu trúc này thường dùng với nghĩa phủ định.

☐ **enough ... to V (đủ....để có thể làm điều gì đó)**

☐ **Cấu trúc:**

S + be/ V + adj/ adv + enough + to V

Ví dụ:

Marry isn't old enough to drive a car.

She speaks Spanish well enough to be an interpreter. It

is cold enough to wear a heavy jacket.

b. Mệnh đề chỉ kết quả

Mệnh đề chỉ kết quả là mệnh đề phụ được dùng để chỉ kết quả do hành động của mệnh đề chính gây ra:

❖ **so ... that (quá ... đến nỗi)**

S + be/ V + so + adj/ adv + that + S + V

Ví dụ:

It was so dark that I couldn't see anything.

The student had behaved so badly that he was dismissed from the class.

☐ **Chú ý:** Nếu động từ trong mệnh đề chính là các động từ chỉ tri giác như look, appear, seem, feel, taste, smell, sound,... ta dùng công thức với động từ to be.

Ví dụ:

The little girl looks so unhappy that we all feel sorry for her.

The soup tastes so good that everyone will ask for more.

Nếu trong câu có *many, much, few, little* thì ta có cấu trúc:

Với danh từ đếm được số nhiều:

Ví dụ:

The Smiths had so many children that they formed their own baseball team. I

had so few ion offers that it wasn't difficult to select one.

There are so many people in the room that I feel tired.

Với danh từ không đếm được:

Ví dụ:

He has invested so much money in the project that he can't abandon it now.

The grass received so little water that it turned brown in the heat.

☐ **Chú ý:** Một cấu trúc khác của *so ... that*

S + V + so + adj + a + singular countable noun + that...

Ví dụ:

It was so hot a day that we decided to stay indoors.

It was so interesting a book that he couldn't put it down.

□ **such ... that (quá ... đến nỗi)**

S + V + such + (a/an) + adj + N + that + S + V

Ví dụ:

It was such a hot day that we decided to stay at home.

She has such exceptional abilities that everyone is jealous of her.

There are such beautiful pictures that everybody will want one. It is

such an intelligent boy that we all admire him.

This is such difficult homework that I will never finish it.

4. Cụm từ và mệnh đề chỉ mục đích

a. Cụm từ

Khẳng định	S + V + to/ in order to/ so as to + V
Phủ định	S + V + in order not to/ so as not to + V

Ví dụ:

He went to France **to study** French.

He does morning exercises **in order to improve** his health.

She is hurrying **so as not to** miss the bus.

□ **Chú ý: Giới từ for cũng dùng để chỉ mục đích**

- **For + Noun:** cũng có thể được dùng để nói đến mục đích của ai khi làm việc gì đó.

Ví dụ: I went to the store **for** some bread.

- **For + O + to-inf.** dùng để nói đến mục đích liên quan hành động của người khác

Ví dụ: I gave him my address. I wanted him **to write to me**.

□ I gave him my address **for him to write to me**.

b. Mệnh đề

Khẳng định	S + V + so that/ in order that + S + will/ can/ would/ could + V
Phủ định	S + V + so that/ in order that + S + will/ can/ would/ could + not + V

Ví dụ:

I'll try my best to study English **so that I can find** a better job. I

put the milk in the fridge **in order that it won't spoil**.

BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG

Exercise 1: Change from in spite of/ despite □ although/though/even though.

1. Despite my warning, they went ahead with their plan.

→

2. They went swimming in spite of the coldness of the water.

→

3. In spite of being bad at pool, she beat him three times in a row.

→

4. She decided to go abroad for a year despite loving her boyfriend very much.

→

5. He went on holiday to Thailand in spite of the expensive airfare.

→

6. Socrates never had much money despite being very famous in his own day.

→

7. His career did not really take off despite his ambitions.

→

8. They managed to work together despite their differences of opinion.

→

9. Despite my headache I enjoyed the film.

→

10. Despite having enough money, he refused to buy a new car.

→

Exercise 2: Change from although/ though/ even though □ in spite of/ despite, starting as available.

1. Although he was tired, he walked to the station.
Despite
2. Although it was noisy, the children slept well.
The children
3. Though Linda earned a low salary, she gave money to her parents. In spite of
4. Tom went to work even though he didn't feel very well.
Tom
5. Their new product turned out to be a success though the market studies were pessimistic.
Their
6. Julie failed the exam though she worked very hard.
Julie
7. Although John got the highest result in the class, he still had problems with the teacher. In spite of
8. Although it was difficult, they managed to climb to the top of the mountain. In spite of
9. Even though he is a little overweight, he is actually quite fit.
Despite
10. Although politicians are necessary for democracy, they are still liars and thieves. In spite of

Exercise 3: Circle the correct answers.

1. Valencia is a fantastic place **although/ despite** being too hot in July and August
2. Cars are very useful in the city **though/ in spite of** they are expensive.
3. She's a great person **in spite of/ even though** getting jealous over stupid things sometimes
4. **In spite of/ despite of** getting the highest result in the class, John still had problems with the teacher
5. The best things in life are free **though/ even though** love is often very expensive
6. I phone my brother in Thailand using Skype nearly every day **despite/ though** the time difference.
7. **In spite/ In spite of** losing her way twice, she arrived safely.
8. **Although/ in spite of** the fact the sun was shining, the water was cold.
9. **Despite/ although** he being hard working, Kevin failed the examination.
10. We stayed up late, **in spite of/ although** we were tired.

Exercise 4: Choose the correct answers.

1. Tom wakes his parents up _____ playing the guitar very softly.
A. because B. in spite of C. because of D. although
2. Many people believe him _____ he often tells a lie.
A. because B. in spite of C. although D. because of
3. _____ she was very hard working; she hardly earned enough to feed her family.
A. In spite of B. Because C. Because of D. Although
4. _____ her poorness, she feels happy.
A. Although B. Because C. If D. In spite of
5. I went to the club last Saturday _____ the heavy rain.
A. because of B. because C. in spite of D. though
6. In spite of his hard work, he could not finish the job.
A. As hard as he work B. Despite he worked hard
C. Though he worked hard D. Although hard work
7. Despite the fact that it rained, we enjoyed our trip.
A. Because of the rain B. Though it is raining
C. Despite of the heavy rain D. Though it rained
8. Tom went to work although he didn't feel very well.
A. that he did not feel very well B. despite of the fact not feeling well
C. because he did not feel very well D. despite not feeling very well
9. Although he is very old, he can walk to the station.
A. In spite of his old age B. Despite his old age
C. Despite the fact that he is old D. All are correct
10. I have tried hard but I can't earn enough money.
A. Although I have tried hard, but I can't earn enough money.
B. Although I have tried hard, I can't earn enough money.
C. In spite of I have tried hard, I can't earn enough money.

- D. Despite I have tried hard, but I can't earn enough money.
11. She stayed at home because her mother was sick.
- A. Despite her sick mother, she stayed at home.
- B. Because of her sick mother, she stayed at home.
- C. In spite of her sick mother, she stayed at home.
- D. A & C are correct.
12. Although he took a taxi, Bill arrived late for the concert.
- A. Bill arrived late for the concert because he takes a taxi.
- B. Bill arrived late for the concert because of the taxi.
- C. In spite of taking a taxi, Bill arrived late for the concert.
- D. Although Bill took a taxi, he can't come to the concert in time.
13. In spite of his suffering from a bad cold, William went to school.
- A. Although William suffers from a bad cold, he went to school.
- B. Although William suffered from a bad cold, he went to school.
- C. William went to school although he is suffering from a bad cold.
- D. William went to school; he suffered from a bad cold although.
14. Despite the fact that it was snowing, I felt warm.
- A. In spite snowing, I felt warm.
- B. In spite of feeling warm, it was snowing.
- C. Although it was snowing, I felt warm.
- D. Although I felt warm, it was snowing.
15. Though he tried hard, he didn't succeed.
- A. Despite he tried hard, he didn't succeed.
- B. In spite of he tried hard, he didn't succeed.
- C. In spite of trying hard, he didn't succeed.
- D. Even though he tried hard, but he didn't succeed.

Exercise 5: Rewrite the sentences keeping the same meaning.

1. Although she didn't want to see The Lord of the Rings, she enjoyed it in the end.
☐
2. They visited Madrid although they didn't have time to visit El Prado.
☐
3. Although it was raining, we decided to go anyway.
☐
4. The English actor Oliver Reed was often rude to people although he was always kind to animals.
☐
5. Although he behaved badly, he wasn't punished.
☐
6. Although he had a good salary, he was unhappy in his job.
☐
7. Although it was raining heavily, we played the match as planned.
☐
8. Although my doctor had told me to stay in bed I went to work.
☐
9. Although he takes a lot of exercises, he's fat.
☐
10. Although I had practiced for hours on end, my first golf ball ended up in the trees.
☐

Exercise 6: Rewrite the sentences with *no matter* + *wh-question word* or *wh- question word* + *ever*.

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____

makes you disappointed, please let it go. she is, he still loves her.

you are tired, you can sleep immediately. you told lies, I still cannot

forgive you.

beautiful you are, I still consider you as my sister. you need, I will stand by you.

you go, you must be home before 10.

you have done, he still does not believe you. tired I was, I didn't sleep.

you come from, I still consider you as my family.

2.2: PHRASE AND CLAUSE OF REASON

Exercise 1: Choose the correct answers.

1. He got wet_____ he forgot his umbrella.
A. because of B. because C. but D. and
2. He stops working_____ heavy raining.
A. in spite of B. although C. despite D. because of
3. They have a lot of difficulties in their life _____ their poverty.
A. in spite of B. although C. because D. because of
4. Jill and Jolly were happy_____ it was their both birthday party that day.
A. because B. even though C. spite of D. Despite
5. Nobody could hear her _____ she spoke too quietly.
A. although B. because C. because of D. in spite of
6. We decided to leave early _____ the party was boring.
A. although B. despite C. because D. because of
7. We all feel sad _____ the bad news
A. because B. because of C. though D. despite
8. John lost his job _____ his laziness.
A. because of B. because C. in spite of D. though
9. We can't go to Julia's party _____ we're going away that weekend.
A. because B. because of C. although D. in spite of
10. Nam was absent from class yesterday _____ he felt sick.
A. so B. because C. although D. but

Exercise 2: Choose the correct answers.

1. The boy can't reach the shelf _____ he's not tall enough.
A. because B. although C. even though D. and
2. She couldn't unlock it _____ she had the wrong key.
A. while B. but C. though D. because
3. Nam failed the final exam _____ he was lazy.
A. while B. though C. because D. but
4. We watched TV the whole evening _____ we had nothing better to do.
A. because B. though C. so D. but
5. We didn't go for a walk _____ it was very cold.
A. though B. because C. but D. so
6. They decided not to go out for a meal _____ they were too tired.
A. so B. because C. but D. if
7. I'm learning English _____ I want to get a better job.
A. or B. because C. therefore D. but
8. Last night we came to the show late _____ the traffic was terrible.
A. although B. despite C. and D. because
9. Lan couldn't pass the exam _____ she is too lazy.
A. because B. because of C. although D. in spite of
10. _____ his broken leg, he didn't come to class yesterday.
A. because B. because of C. despite D. so

Exercise 3: Complete the sentences with *because/ because of*.

1. We delayed our trip _____ the bad weather.
2. Sue's eyes were red _____ she had been crying.
3. My mother is always complaining _____ the untidiness of my room.
4. The water in most river is unsafe to drink _____ it's polluted.
5. The trees were bend over _____ the wind.
6. You can't enter this secure areas _____ you don't have an official permit.
7. It's unsafe to travel in that country _____ the ongoing civil war.
8. Several people in the crowd became ill and fainted _____ the extreme heat.

9. Mark didn't go to work yesterday_____he didn't feel well.

10. We couldn't get into the disco_____the enormous crowd.

Exercise 4: Complete the sentences with *because/ because of*.

1. I went home early_____I was feeling unwell.

2. We decided not to go out for a meal_____we were simply too tired.

3. I couldn't get to sleep_____the noise.

4. He only accepted the job_____the salary, which was very high.

5. Sarah can't climb up the tree_____her fear of heights.

6. _____his age, John was not hired_____he had the necessary qualifications.

7. Mary came to class late_____her motorbike had a puncture.

8. Sandy didn't go to school yesterday_____she was sick.

9. She went to bed early_____her tiredness.

10. I couldn't do the test_____it was too difficult.

Exercise 5: Rewrite the sentences, using *because/because of*

1. He didn't come because of his sickness.

→

2. The train was late because the fog was thick.

→

3. The plane couldn't take off because of the bad weather.

→

4. He left the school because his family was poor.

→

5. We couldn't study because of the noise.

→

6. I didn't go swimming because it was cold.

→

7. These students arrive late because of the bad traffic.

→

8. Mary can't sleep because she has drunk a cup of strong coffee.

→

9. Because of getting up early, he wasn't late for the first train.

→

10. He was accepted for the job because he had much experience.

→

Exercise 6: Rewrite the sentences, using *because/because of*

1. Kevin has failed many times, so he disappointed.

→

2. I had not eaten for 24 hours. I was very hungry.

→

3. He ate all the fruits. The fruits were ripe.

→

4. He hadn't finished the letter. He didn't go to sleep.

→

5. He is dismissed. He was late for the work very often.

→

6. He drove too fast. He caused a serious accident.

→

7. The streets are narrow, so there are not many people driving cars in this city.

→

8. The test was so difficult that I couldn't do it.

→

9. I don't know Russian. I have to have my document translated into Russian.

→

10. The children had an accident. They went to school late.

→

2.3

PHRASE AND CLAUSE OF RESULT

2.3.1 ENOUGH AND TOO

Exercise 1: Complete the second sentence with (not) too/ enough + adj/adv so that it has the same meaning as the first one.

1. The weather is fine. Mary and her little brother can go to school.
→ The weather is ___for Mary and her little brother to go to school.
2. The sun is not warm. We can't live on it.
→ The sun is _____for us to live on.
3. The water is quite warm. I can drink it.
→ The water is ___for me to drink.
4. The weather is so bad that we can't go out.
→ The weather is ___for us to go out.
5. The film was so boring that we couldn't go on seeing it.
→ The film was ___for us to go on seeing it.
5. He was so old that he couldn't run fast.
6. → He was _____to run fast.
7. You speak so fast that I can't catch up with your words.
→ You speak _____for us me to catch up with your words.
8. It is so early that we can't go out.
→ It is _____for us to go out.
9. The film was very boring. We left before the end.
→ The film was ___for us to leave before the end.
10. The water is so hot that I can't drink it.
→ The water is ___for me to drink.

Exercise 2: Rewrite the sentences using too.

1. This soup is very hot. We can't eat it.
→
2. This morning is very cold. We couldn't go swimming.
→
3. She can't carry the box; it's very heavy.
→
4. The room was very dirty. Nobody can learn it.
→
5. It was very late. She couldn't go home.
→
6. The class was very tired. The teacher couldn't explain the lesson.
→
7. She couldn't see the film because it was very boring.
→
8. You can't catch any taxi to the airport because it is very early.
→
9. It was very cold. They couldn't keep working in the field.
→
10. The fair was very noisy. We couldn't hear each other.
→

Exercise 3: Rewrite the sentences using enough.

1. These oranges are ripe. You can eat them.
→
2. They can't sleep. They aren't tired.
→
3. She is old, so she can drive a car.
→
4. All students had to stay at home because it rained heavily.
→
5. The truck can go through the gate because it is very wide.
→
6. Tom was very brave boy, so all his friends admired him.
→
7. The room was very comfortable. We all fell asleep easily.

- 8. He spoke slowly. We could understand him.
→
9. The soup is very excellent. We will have some.
→
10. They were very tired, so they stopped working?
→

Exercise 4: Tick ☒ to the correct sentences and correct the wrong sentences.

1. He studied so badly that he couldn't pass the exam.
→
2. It is very cold. We can't bathe.
→
3. Would you be very kind and answer this letter by return?
→
4. The story was very funny. We couldn't stop laughing.
→
5. The floor wasn't strong. We couldn't dance on it.
→
6. There were so many exercises that I couldn't finish them in a short time.
→
7. He spoke so fast that we couldn't understand him.
→
8. The restaurant is so expensive that we can't eat in that restaurant.
→
9. The price of the house is very high. We can't buy it.
→
10. I am very unhappy, so I cannot go out with him.
→
11. They sang very well. I could invite them to the party.
→
12. You are very young. You can't have a front-door key.
→
13. I am rather old. I can't wear that kind of hat.
→
14. The ladder wasn't very long. It didn't reach the window.
→
15. He hadn't much money. He couldn't live on it.
→
16. He was furious. He couldn't speak.
→
17. The fire isn't very hot. It won't boil a kettle.
→
18. You are quite thin. You could slip between the bars.
→
19. He is very ill. He can't eat anything.
→
20. Our new car is very wide. It won't get through those gates.
→

Exercise 5: Rewrite the sentences using *too* or *enough*.

1. The question was very hard. We couldn't answer it.
→
2. You're very young. You can't drive that car.
→
3. She was tired. She didn't go anywhere.
→
4. These shoes are very small. I can't wear them.
→

5. He is so weak. He can't run.

→

6. The TV programmer is very exciting. The children won't miss it.

→

7. The coffee was very hot. I could drink it.

→

8. He has a lot of money. He can buy a car.

→

9. He is very intelligent. He can do it.

→

10. Tom is strong. He can lift the box.

→

2.3.2: SO THAT AND SUCH THAT

Exercise 1: Rewrite the sentences with *such ... that*.

1. The room is so untidy that it took us one hour to clean it.

→

2. The man is so fool that no one took any notice of him.

→

3. The film is so long that they can't broadcast it on one night.

→

4. The books are so interesting that we have read them many times.

→

5. The news was so bad that she burst into tears on hearing it.

→

6. The food was so hot that it turned my tongue.

→

7. The boy is so fat that everyone calls him Stuff.

→

8. The milk is so excellent that all the children want some more.

→

9. The weather was so warm that they had a walk in the garden.

→

10. The match was so exciting that all the fans shouted loudly.

→

Exercise 2: Rewrite the sentences with *so... that*.

1. The coffee is extremely hot. The children can't drink it.

→

2. My brother is very strong. He can lift this heavy table.

→

3. That play is very interesting. You should see it.

→

4. The suitcase is very heavy. Nobody can carry it upstairs.

→

5. My brother is very intelligent. He can do this difficult exercise.

→

6. The man is extremely poor. He can't buy a new bike for his wife.

→

7. This coat is very short. He can't wear it.

→

8. The tests were quite difficult. We couldn't do them.

→

9. The boy is very lazy. Everybody hates him.

→

10. The girl is very intelligent. She can do this difficult exercise.

→

Exercise 3: Rewrite the sentences, beginning as available.

1. The woman was so poor that she needs everyone's help.

- It
2. Mary is a good swimmer. She has won two gold medals.
- Mary
3. He drank strong coffee. He couldn't go to sleep.
- He
4. It was a long walk. The children got tired.
- It
5. He had a difficult exercise. He couldn't do it.
- It
6. The speaker gave a long talk. Most of the audience felt sleepy.
- The talk
7. We watched an exciting competition. We didn't want to go home.
- The competition
8. It was an excellent show. We all enjoyed it.
- The show
9. His letter was rude. I didn't know what to think.
- His letter
10. The train was so slow. It would have been faster to walk.
- It

Exercise 4: Complete the sentences with *so/such/such a*.

1. It's difficult to understand him because he speaks _____ quietly.
2. I like Liz and Joe. They're _____ nice people.
3. It was a great holiday. We had _____ good time.
4. I was surprised that he looked _____ well after his recent illness.
5. Everything is _____ expensive these days, isn't it?
6. The weather is beautiful, isn't it? I didn't expect it to be _____ nice day.
7. I have to go. I didn't realise it was _____ late.
8. He always looks good. He wears _____ nice clothes.
9. It was _____ boring film that I felt asleep while I was watching it.
10. I couldn't believe the news. It was _____ shock.
11. I think she works too hard. She looks _____ tired all the time.
12. The food at the hotel was _____ awful. I've never eaten _____ awful food.
13. They've got _____ much money they don't know what to do with it.
14. I didn't realise you lived _____ long way from the city centre.
15. The party was really great. It was _____ pity you couldn't come.

Exercise 5: Choose the correct answer.

1. He was **so/such** shy that he didn't want to go to the party.
2. The dress was **so/such** small that I couldn't wear it.
3. It was **so/such** a lovely night that we stayed outside until late.
4. It was **so/such** a long journey that we feel asleep.
5. She was **so/such** busy that she couldn't have lunch.
6. The cat is **so/such** fat that it can't walk.
7. She is **so/such** a good teacher that all the students like her.
8. I had **so/such** a terrible headache that I spent the whole day in bed.
9. It was **so/such** a boring book that I couldn't finish reading it.
10. The weather was **so/such** hot that we couldn't sleep at night.

Exercise 6: Tick ☒ to the correct sentences and Underline the mistake in each sentence.

1. I didn't know you had so a big house.
2. I've never met such a kind people as your family.
3. It's been such terrible weather that the farmers haven't been able to grow anything.
4. If you weren't such impatient, things would be better for you.
5. He always makes so fool of himself as nobody wants to make friends with him.
6. He always makes such a stupid mistakes.
7. He had such a fast car that he travelled everywhere in no time.
8. It's so late and I won't be able to catch my usual train.
9. He speaks so fast that I can understand nothing he says.
10. I have such much work that I can't go out.
11. Why are you making so many noise?

12. He works so hard that he looks exhausted most of the time.
13. There were so many people on the bus that I couldn't find an empty seat.
14. If you keep on practicing so much, you'll make a lot of progress.
15. He is so an idiot that everybody ignores him.

2.4 : PHASE AND CLAUSE OF PURPOSE

Exercise 1: Match the sentences, using *in order to/ so as to/ to*.

1. The boys stood on the desks. They wanted to get a better view.
☐
2. We learn English. We want to have better communication with other people.
☐
3. We lower the volume. We don't want to bother our neighbors.
☐
4. I will write to you. I want you to know my decision soon.
☐
5. These girls were talking whispers. They didn't want anyone to hear their conversation.
☐
6. I spoke loudly. I wanted everybody could hear me clearly.
☐
7. You must take your umbrella. You won't get wet.
☐
8. Tom gets up early. He doesn't want to be late for school.
☐
9. I'm studying hard. I want to keep pace with my classmates.
☐
10. Alice prepares her lessons carefully. She wants to get high marks in class.
☐

Exercise 2: Match the sentences, using *so that/in order that*.

1. Mary often goes home as soon as the class is over. She doesn't want her mother to wait for her.
☐
2. I took my camera. I wanted to take some photos.
☐
3. He studied really hard. He wanted to get better marks.
☐
4. Jason learns Chinese. His aim is to work in China.
☐
5. I've collected money. I will buy a new car.
☐
6. Many people left Turkey in 1960s. They wanted to find jobs in Germany.
☐
7. She attends to a course. She wants to learn chess.
☐
8. Linda turned on the lights. She wanted to see better.
☐
9. I will come with you. I want to help you.
☐
10. We are going to cinema. We will watch a horror film.
☐

Exercise 3: Change from phrase into clause.

1. We hurried to school so as not to be late.
☐
2. He climbed the tree in order to get a better view.
☐
3. Some young people like to earn their own living in order to be independent of their parents.
☐
4. We should do morning exercises so as to improve our health.
☐

5. We should take advantage of the scientific achievements of the world so as to develop our national economy.

☐

6. Every people in the world must unite their efforts to maintain and protect peace.

☐

7. She put on warm clothes so as not to catch the cold.

☐

8. He hurried to the station so as not to miss the train.

☐

9. She locked the door in order not to be disturbed.

☐

10. I tried to be on time so as not to make our teacher said.

☐

Exercise 4: Change from clause into phrase, suing phrase in the parentheses.

1. People use money so that they can buy things they need. (in order to)

☐

2. Banks are developed so that they can keep people's money safe. (in order to)

☐

3. I need to buy some laundry detergent so that I will wash my clothes. (in order to)

☐

4. I came to this school so that I could learn English, (in order to)

☐

5. Tom was playing very softly so that he wouldn't disturb anyone. (in order not to)

☐

6. They rushed into the burning house so that they could save the child. (in order to)

☐

7. Lan often attends English speaking club so that she can practice speaking English. (so as to)

☐

8. He stood on the chair so that she can see better. (in order to)

☐

9. Please shut the gate so that the cows can't get out of the cowshed. (in order to)

☐

10. The boy tiptoed into the room because he didn't want to wake up everybody up. (so as not to)

☐

Exercise 5: Choose the correct answers.

1. I moved to the front of the room_____I could see better.

A. so as to . B. in order to C. to D. so that

2. He opened the window_____let fresh air in.

A. for B. to C. in order for D. so as

3. He turned out the light_____waste electricity.

A. not B. without C. so that not D. in order not to

4. I am lighting the fire so that the house_____be warm when they return.

A. would B. wouldn't C. will D. won't

5. Mary worked hard_____pass the examination.

A. as so to B. so as to C. so that to D. in order not to

6. She is taking science course at school_____order to choose science for her profession.

A. so B. on C. in D. at

7. She weighed herself_____know the pull of the earth exerting on her.

A. for B. so that C. in order D. to

8. He hurried so that he_____miss the train.

A. won't B. doesn't C. didn't D. wouldn't

9. He does morning exercises regularly_____to improve his health.

A. not B. without C. so that not D. in order

10. Mary took her brother to school for him_____English.

A. to learn B. learning C. learns D. learned

Exercise 6: Choose the correct answers.

1. We have to start early_____we won't be late.

A. so that B. so as to C. because D. although

2. The school boys are in hurry_____they will not be late for school.
A. so as to B. to C. in order that D. for
3. We set off early_____we wouldn't get stuck in the traffic.
A. although B. so that C. because D. in case
4. My mother went to London_____see my aunt's family.
A. in order to B. so that C. not to D. not
5. Julie saves money_____buy a new motorbike.
A. not in order to B. as so to C. so that D. so that she can
6. Sarah went to the photocopy shop_____print out her research report.
A. so that B. for C. to D. in order for
7. He studies very hard _____
A. in order to fail the examination B. so that to get knowledge
C. so as not to pass examination D. in order that he could be illiterate
8. "I spoke slowly. The foreigner could understand me." Means:
A. I spoke slowly so that the foreigner could understand me.
B. I spoke slowly in order to the foreigner could understand me.
C. I spoke slowly that the foreigner could understand me.
D. I spoke slowly to make the foreigner could understand me.
9. He had to explain the lesson very clearly_____.
A. in order that his students to understand it B. so that his students could understand it
C. so as his students to understand it D. so that his students to understand it.
10. He hurried to the station. He didn't want to miss the train.
A. He hurried to the station so that he couldn't miss the train.
B. He hurried to the station in order that he couldn't miss the train.
C. He hurried to the station not to miss the train.
D. All are correct.

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 3: CÁC DẠNG SO SÁNH CỦA TÍNH TỪ VÀ TRẠNG TỪ (COMPARISONS OF ADJECTIVE AND ADVERB)

1. So sánh bằng với tính từ và trạng từ

ü Cấu trúc:

S + V + as + adj/adv + as + ...

Ví dụ:

- She is **as tall as** I am = She is as tall as me. (Cô ấy cao bằng tôi.)
- He runs **as quickly as** I do = He runs as quickly as me. (Anh ấy chạy nhanh như tôi.)
- Your dress is **as long as** my dress = Your dress is as long as mine. (Váy của bạn dài bằng váy của tôi.)

2. So sánh hơn với tính từ và trạng từ.

a. So sánh hơn với tính từ ngắn và trạng từ ngắn:

ü Cấu trúc:

S + be/ V + adj/ adv-er + than + ...

Ví dụ:

- This book is **thicker than** that one. (Cuốn sách này dày hơn cuốn sách kia.)
- They work **harder than** I do. = They work **harder than** me. (Họ làm việc chăm chỉ hơn tôi.)

b. So sánh hơn với tính từ dài và trạng từ dài:

ü Cấu trúc:

S1 + more + adj/ adv + than + ...

Ví dụ:

- He is **more intelligent than** I am. = He is **more intelligent than** me. (Anh ấy thông minh hơn tôi.)
- My friend did **the test more carefully than** I did. = My friend did the test **more carefully than** me. (Bạn tôi làm bài kiểm tra cẩn thận hơn tôi.)

3. So sánh nhất với tính từ và trạng từ.

+ So sánh hơn nhất với tính từ ngắn và trạng từ ngắn:

ü Cấu trúc:

S + V + the + adj-est/ adv-est

Ví dụ:

- It is **the darkest** time in my life. (Đó là khoảng thời gian tăm tối nhất trong cuộc đời tôi.)

- He runs **the fastest** in my class. (Anh ấy chạy nhanh nhất lớp tôi.)

+ **So sánh hơn nhất đối với tính từ dài và trạng từ dài:**

ü **Cấu trúc:**

S + V + the most + adj/ adv

Ví dụ:

- She is **the most beautiful** girl I've ever met. (Cô ấy là cô gái xinh nhất mà tôi từng gặp.)

- He drives **the most carelessly** among US. (Anh ấy lái xe ẩu nhất trong số chúng tôi.)

Ø **Chú ý:**

+ Một số tính từ có 2 âm tiết nhưng có tận cùng là “y, le, ow, er” khi sử dụng ở so sánh hơn hay so sánh hơn nhất ta áp dụng cấu trúc so sánh hơn của tính từ ngắn.

Tính từ	So sánh hơn	So sánh hơn nhất
happy	happier	the happiest
simple	simpler	the simplest
narrow	narrower	the narrowest
clever	cleverer	the cleverest

Ví dụ:

- Now they are **happier than** they were before. (Bây giờ họ hạnh phúc hơn trước kia.)

Ta thấy “happy” là một tính từ có 2 âm tiết nhưng khi sử dụng so sánh hơn, ta sử dụng cấu trúc so sánh hơn của tính từ ngắn.

+ Một số tính từ và trạng từ bất quy tắc.

Tính từ/ Trạng từ	So sánh hơn	So sánh hơn nhất
good/well	better	the best
bad/ badly	worse	the worst
much/ many	more	the most
a little/ little	less	the least
far	farther/ further	the farthest/ furthest

BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG

Exercise 1: Give the correct form of the adjectives and adverbs in brackets.

1. This chair is (comfortable)_____than that one.
2. Your flat is (large)_____than mine.
3. The weather today is (hot)_____than it was yesterday.
4. The Nile is (long)_____river in the world.
5. Chinese bicycles are (bad)_____than Japanese ones.
6. Mathematics is (difficult)_____than English.
7. Ho Chi Minh is (big)_____city in Vietnam.
8. He drives (carefully)_____than his friend.
9. She sings (beautifully)_____in this school.
10. I read (slow)_____than my sister.

Exercise 2: Give the correct form of the adjectives and adverbs in brackets.

1. Grace is (old)_____girl in our class.
2. This exercise is (easy)_____than that one.
3. He is twice (fat)_____you.
4. Nam is (noisy)_____student of all.
5. My cold is (good)_____today than it was yesterday.
6. A new house is (expensive)_____. than an old one.
7. Of the four ties, I like the red one (well)_____.
8. Nobody is (happy)_____than Miss Snow.
9. Today English is (international)_____of languages.
10. John is (strong)_____as I thought.

Exercise 3: Choose the correct answers.

1. Hotels have developed_____restaurants.

- A. as rapidly as B. so rapidly as C. as rapid as D. more rapid
2. Can Tho bridge is the _____ one in the South of Vietnam.
A. long B. shortest C. longest D. longer
3. Albert Einstein's contributions to scientific theory were _____ those of Galileo and Newton.
A. important than B. more important C. the most important D. as important as
4. Impalas cannot move as _____ cheetahs but they are more efficient runners.
A. faster than B. fast as C. fast D. are fast as
5. Of the two shirts, this one is _____.
A. the prettiest B. the most pretty C. prettier D. the prettier
6. The test is not _____.
A. as difficult as it was last month B. so difficult as it was last month
C. more difficult as it was last month D. Both A and B are correct.
7. Peter cannot earn _____ his wife.
A. as many money as B. as much money as
C. as many more than D. as much money than
8. Of the five students, Mary is _____.
A. more intelligent B. the more intelligent
C. most intelligent D. the most intelligent
9. Steel is _____ than wood.
A. more heavy B. as heavy C. heavier D. more heavier
10. A supermarket is _____ a shopping center.
A. less convenient as B. less convenient than
C. not so convenient than D. the most convenient as

Exercise 4: Choose the correct answers.

1. Tim's grades are _____ than John.
A. worse B. worst C. as bad D. so bad
2. Ms. Jones isn't as nice _____ Ms. Smith.
A. as B. for C. like D. to
3. The rooms in Graduate Towers are _____ Patterson Hall.
A. larger than B. larger than that of
C. larger than those in D. larger than in
4. Tuition at an American university runs _____ six thousand dollars a semester.
A. so high as B. as high to C. as high as D. as high than
5. Everyone looks much _____ today than they did yesterday.
A. happy B. happily C. more happily D. happier
6. Mr. Brown receives a _____ salary than anyone else in the company.
A. big B. more bigger C. bigger D. the bigger
7. The Boeing 747 is twice _____ the Boeing 707.
A. bigger than B. as bigger as C. as big as D. more bigger than
8. "Do you know that beautiful lady over there?" "Yes, that's Maria. She's _____ in her group."
A. more beautiful than any girl B. more beautiful than any other girl
C. so beautiful as other girl D. beautiful more than another girl
9. My young brother grew very quickly and soon he was _____ my mother.
A. more big than B. so big than C. as big as D. too big than
10. Dianna is the _____ of the three sisters.
A. more short B. shorter C. shortest D. more short

Exercise 5: Rewrite the sentences keeping the same meaning, beginning as available.

1. My kitchen is smaller than yours.
Your kitchen
2. No one in the class is taller than Dave.
Dave is
3. Mum doesn't speak English as well as Dad.
Dad
4. Lan is better cook than Hoa.
Hoa can't
5. No restaurant in the city is better than that one.
That restaurant is

6. This watch is worse than that one.
That watch
7. My sister writes more carefully than she did.
My sister
8. This story is more interesting than any other story that I have ever read.
This is the
9. She is the most beautiful girl I have ever known.
I've never
10. Peter does not drive so carefully as Tom.
Tom

Exercise 6: Rewrite the sentences keeping the same meaning, beginning as available.

1. Yesterday the temperature was nine degrees. Today it's only six degrees.
It is
2. The journey takes four hours by car and five hours by train.
It takes
3. We were very busy at work today. We are not as busy as that every day.
We
4. Jane cooks better than her sister.
Jane's
5. Tom is the best football player in this team.
Nobody in this team
6. They understand more than we do.
We
7. It is much more difficult to speak English than to speak French.
To speak
8. My interview lasted longer than yours.
Your interview
9. When I was younger, I used to go climbing more than I do now.
Now
10. Your coffee is not as good as mine.
My coffee

Exercise 7: Underline the mistake in each sentence.

1. Richard feels good than several days ago.
2. Mary and Daisy are both intelligent students. Mary is so intelligent as Daisy.
3. I found the conversation as most interesting and I was glad to practice my English.
4. The Caspian Sea, a salt lake, is largest than any other lakes in the world.
5. He drives the car more dangerous than his brother does.
6. It was the most biggest building that I had ever seen.
7. I wish my house were so large as John's.
8. The Mekong is one of the longer rivers in the world.
9. She can play the piano more good than her sister.
10. Many people believe that New York is the most great city in America.

Exercise 8: Underline the mistake in each sentence.

1. Jessica is only an amateur, but she sings well than most professionals.
2. This house is more spacious as that white house I bought in Rapid City, South Dakota last year.
3. Lan is the more capable of the three girls who have tried out for the part in the play.
4. This telephone isn't as cheap so the other one, but it work much better.
5. Stories are the most good way of teaching moral lessons to young people.
6. This exercise is much more easier than the others.
7. London is much more exciting as I expected.
8. That brown chair is most comfortable than this one.
9. Lan is the most pretty of all the girls.
10. Does your country have worse weather as this?

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 4: CÂU TƯỜNG THUẬT (REPORTED SPEECH)

Câu tường thuật được dùng để tường thuật lại một lời nói của ai đó.

1. Một số lưu ý khi chuyển từ câu trực tiếp sang câu gián tiếp
- Sự chuyển đổi về thì.

Câu trực tiếp	Câu gián tiếp
hiện tại đơn	quá khứ đơn
hiện tại tiếp diễn	quá khứ tiếp diễn
hiện tại hoàn thành	quá khứ hoàn thành
quá khứ đơn	quá khứ hoàn thành
quá khứ tiếp diễn	quá khứ hoàn thành tiếp diễn
quá khứ hoàn thành	quá khứ hoàn thành
can	could
will	would
shall	should
may	might
must	had to

- Sự chuyển đổi của các trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian và nơi chốn.

Câu trực tiếp	Câu gián tiếp
Today	that day
Tonight	that night
Now	Then
Ago	Before
Yesterday	the day before
last week	the week before next week/ the week after
tomorrow	the day after
this	That
these	Those
here	There

- ☐ **Chú ý:** Đa phần các động từ tường thuật đều ở quá khứ. Tuy vậy, đôi khi động từ tường thuật có thể ở thì hiện tại. Khi động từ tường thuật ở thì hiện tại thì ta không lùi thì. Ngoài ra ta phải chuyển đổi ngôi sao cho phù hợp với từng tình huống.

Ví dụ: Tom **said** "I will go to England tomorrow".

- ☐ Tom **said** (that) he would go to England the next day.

Ví dụ: Mary **says** "I am from England".

- ☐ Mary **says** (that) she is from England

2. Các dạng câu tường thuật.

a. Câu khẳng định và phủ định

Động từ tường thuật thường là *said/told*.

Ví dụ: He said, "I have seen her today."

- ☐ He said (that) he had seen her that day.

Ví dụ: The teacher said to Peter, "The prize was not given to you."

- ☐ The teacher told Peter (that) the prize had not been given to him.

- ☐ **Chú ý:** said to ☐ told

b. Câu hỏi

Động từ tường thuật thường là *asked/ wondered/ wanted to know*

- Với dạng câu Yes/ No question.

Ví dụ: She asked me, "Do you like reading books?"

- ☐ She asked me if I liked reading books.

Ví dụ: He said, "Can you speak English, Mary?"

- ☐ He asked Mary whether she could speak English.

- Với dạng câu Wh question.

Ví dụ: He said, "What is her name?"

- ☐ He asked what her name was.

Ví dụ: She said to him, "Where do you live?"

- ☐ She asked him where he lived.

c. Câu mệnh lệnh, yêu cầu, đề nghị, lời khuyên ...:

Động từ tường thuật thường là *told/ asked/ ordered/ commanded, requested*

Khẳng định:	S + asked/ told + O + to V-inf
Phủ định:	S + asked/ told + O + not to V-inf

Ví dụ: The teacher said, “Answer the question, Nam.”

☐ The teacher told Nam to answer the question.

Ví dụ: Nam said to his friend, “Don’t shut the door.”

☐ Nam asked his friend not to shut the door.

d. Câu cảm thán (Exclamation)

Câu cảm thán bắt đầu bằng **What + (a/an) .../ hoặc How + ...!** thường được thuật lại bằng động từ **exclaim/ say that**.

Ví dụ: What a lovely garden!

☐ She exclaimed/ said that it was a lovely garden. Or
She exclaimed/ said that the garden was lovely.

BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG

Exercise 1: Change into reported speech: normal type.

1. Nam said, “I was at school after 7 o’clock last night.”

☐

2. Thu said, “All the students will have a meeting next week.”

☐

3. Phong said, “My parents are very proud of my good marks”

☐

4. The teacher said, “All the homework must be done carefully”

☐

5. Her brother said to her “You can go to the movie with your friend”

☐

6. Hoa said, “I may visit my parents in the summer”

☐

7. The teacher said, “We can collect old books for the poor students”

☐

8. She said, “My mother doesn’t buy this book”

☐

9. The boys said, “We have to try our best to win the match”

☐

10. Her classmate said “Lan is the most intelligent girl in our class”

Exercise 2: Change into reported speech: normal type.

1. They told us “Our friends will get the award for their highest scores”

☐

2. He said “I will go to school by bus tomorrow”

☐

3. Phong said “I need to learn more vocabulary”

☐

4. His brother told him “You can use my computer today”

☐

5. Mai said “I cannot go to the movies with you, Nam”

☐

6. Tom said “I have already had breakfast, so I am not hungry”

☐

7. I said to Nick “You don’t have to do it right now. You can do it tomorrow”

☐

8. He said to them “Your supervisor will be here in five minutes.”

☐

9. She said to me “I want to lend you my bike, but my brother has broken it yesterday. I’m so sorry.”

☐

10. Mother said to me “The sun rises in the East.”

☐

Exercise 3: Change into reported speech: question: yes/no question.

1. “Do you enjoy reading?” Phong asked Peter

☐

2. “Does she like sports?” Hoa asked Lan
☐
3. “Do your sister and brother go to the same school?” She asked Nam
☐
4. “Are there some oranges in the fridge?” She asked her mom
☐
5. “Will it rain tomorrow morning?” He asked his friend
☐
6. “Did you go to Hue three years ago?” Tam asked Peter
☐
7. “Are Tam and Hoa late for class?” Tuan asked Lan
☐
8. She said to me, “Can you speak Chinese?”
☐
9. “Will she be here for five days?” Tam asked Thu
☐
10. “Were you reading this book at 8 o’clock last Sunday?” She asked Ba
☐

Exercise 4: Change into reported speech: question: wh-question.

1. “Where does your father work?” The teacher asked me
2. “How many people are there in your family?” She asked Lan
☐
3. Tam’s friend asked him “How long will you stay in England?”
☐
4. “How many oranges are there in the fridge?” Tam asked Lien
☐
5. The teacher said to Lien, “What is your hobby?”
☐
6. “How do you go to the airport?” His friend asked him
☐
7. “How much does this dress cost?” Lan asked Mai
☐
8. Ba asked Tam, “How often do you wash your clothes?”
☐
9. “When will your father leave Vietnam for USA?” Phong asked Thu
☐
10. “How many books do the students need?” The librarian asked my teacher
☐

Exercise 5: Change into reported speech: request.

1. Teacher to John “Write that exercise carefully”
Teachers requested
2. Mrs. Green said “Please sing at our party, Mary” Mrs. Green invited
3. Teacher to John “Be careful. Think before you answer”
Teachers requested
4. Tom “Read my exercise, John, and tell me if it is correct” Tom requested
5. She said to him, “Give me another glass of wine” She requested
6. “It is cold here, is the window open?” He asked me. He requested
7. The pupil said “Teacher, give us better marks, please” The pupil requested
8. “What a dirty face you have!” Ann said to her son. Ann requested
9. “Don’t come back before one o’clock” advised my brother My brother advised

10. "Can you tell me where the bus station is?" she said to me She asked

Exercise 6: Change into reported speech: request.

1. "It is a very nice evening. Why don't we go out for a walk?" Mrs. Brown suggested

☐

2. "Why don't we come to visit our teacher today?" he said (suggest)

☐

3. "My advice to you is to do morning exercises" she said (advise)

☐

4. "Be modest if you are a good pupil" said my father

☐

5. "Don't forget to send your parents my regards" she said to me.

☐

6. "Have you got shampoo, Alice? I must wash my hair." Johnny asked

☐

7. "Do as I tell you or you will be punished. I will teach you who the master in this house is," he said.

☐

8. "I shouldn't do that if I were you. Isn't it very dangerous" he said

☐

9. Mary said, "I cannot go to the movie with you, John"

☐

11. "Shut the door but don't lock it" she said to us.

→

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 5: CÂU AO ƯỚC (WISH AND IF ONLY)

Mệnh đề sau *wish* và *if only* diễn tả một điều không có thật, cấu trúc của *wish* và *if only* như sau

1. Diễn tả điều ước không có thật ở tương lai.

S + wish + S + would/ could + V

Ví dụ: She wishes Tom would be here tomorrow.

If only Tom would be here tomorrow.

2. Diễn tả điều ước không có thật ở hiện tại.

S + wish + S + Ved/ V2

(be ⇒ were)

Ví dụ: I wish Mary were here now. (Mary isn't here now.) If only I had more money. (I don't have money.)

3. Diễn tả điều ước không có thật ở quá khứ.

S + wish + S + had + P_{II}

Ví dụ: We wish he had passed her exam last year. (He didn't pass the exam last year) If only you hadn't told her about our plan. (You told her about our plan)

BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG

Exercise 1: Put the verbs in brackets into the correct forms.

1. I wish I (live)_____near my school.

2. If only I (know)_____her address.

3. I wish I (be)_____taller.

4. I wish I (meet)_____her now.

5. If only he (not leave)_____here.

6. She wishes she (finish)_____her homework last night.

7. I wish they (come)_____here last Sunday .

8. I wish they (visit)_____us last week.

9. She wishes she (spend)_____her holiday at the seaside last weekend.

10. I wish the weather (be not)_____hot yesterday.

Exercise 2: Put the verbs in brackets into the correct forms.

1. I wish I (be)_____a doctor when I grow up

2. They wish it (not rain) _____tomorrow

3. If only we (not have)_____a test next Tuesday.

4. I wish it (be)_____fine on the party next week.
5. I wish tomorrow (be)_____a beautiful day.
6. I wish I (have)_____a lot of interesting book.
7. I wish I (meet)_____her tomorrow.
8. She wishes she (come)_____here to visit us next month.
9. I am too busy. I wish I (have)_____more time to take care of my family.
10. If only Miss Hoa (come)_____here and stay with us next week.

Exercise 3: Rewrite the sentences keeping the same meaning, beginning as available.

1. I have to study. → I
2. We had a lot of homework yesterday. → If
3. It was very cold last night. → I
4. They work slowly. → If
5. She doesn't join in the trip. → She
6. I am not good at English. → If
7. He doesn't like playing sports. → He
8. I don't have a computer. → If
9. Today isn't a holiday. → I
10. I can't sing this song. → If

Exercise 4: Rewrite the sentences with *wish* or *if only*.

1. He was punished by his mother.
Ⓡ
2. They won't come here again.
Ⓡ
3. I may not go on a camping trip.
Ⓡ
4. I can't play basketball.
Ⓡ
5. I would like to have a bigger house.
Ⓡ
6. I would like them to keep quiet.
Ⓡ
7. You have to clean the floor after meals.
Ⓡ
8. I'm sorry that I didn't do homework last night.
Ⓡ
9. It's a pity that you didn't tell me about that.
Ⓡ
10. I regret staying up late last night.
Ⓡ

Exercise 5: Correct the incorrect part of each sentence.

1. She wish she could speak English well.
Ⓡ
2. If only it didn't rained.
Ⓡ
3. I wish I was a doctor to save people.
Ⓡ
4. I wish I have more time to work.
Ⓡ
5. He wishes it didn't rain two days ago.
Ⓡ
6. If only my father gives up smoking.
Ⓡ
7. I wish I studied very well last year.
Ⓡ
8. I wish you will come to my party next week.
Ⓡ
9. I wish it stops raining now.
Ⓡ

10. She wishes she is the most beautiful girl in the world.

®

Exercise 6: Correct the incorrect part of each sentence.

1. I wish I am at home with my family now.

®

2. If only I could been there with you in those days.

®

3. She wishes she could go home now.

®

4. I wish I take more care of my skin when I was younger.

®

5. If only I have more money for plastic surgery, I could do so much.

®

6. The doctor wishes he didn't work so many shifts last week.

®

7. The doctor wishes the patient stops complaining.

®

8. I have never permitted to stay outside after 10 p.m. If only I have more freedom.

®

9. Look at those children. If only you don't have that many children.

®

10. I wish I will be famous one day.

®

Exercise 7: Choose the correct answers.

1. She wishes her father _____ here now to help her.

A. are B. were C. was D. would be

2. I wish they _____ us when they were in town.

A. visit B. visited C. will visit D. had visited

3. I wish someone _____ me a job next month.

A. would give B. would be given C. will give D. give

4. If only I _____ the trip to Hanoi with her next summer.

A. will take B. takes C. could take D. took

5. I wish they _____ the truth yesterday.

A. had know B. had known C. knew D. known

6. I wish I _____ that film on TV again.

A. saw B. seen C. had seen D. would see

7. We wish she _____ our teacher of English.

A. was B. were C. be D. would be

8. My brother wishes he _____ time when he was young.

A. does not waste B. do not waste C. wasted D. had not wasted

9. They wish they _____ to class on time yesterday morning.

A. had come B. had came C. have came D. came

10. I wish I _____ my last summer vacation in the mountains.

A. will spend B. would spend C. had spent D. spent

Exercise 8: Choose the correct answer.

1. **A:** Could you lend me some money?

B: I wish I _____ you some money for your rent, but I'm broke myself.

A. can lend B. would lend C. could lend D. will lend

2. **A:** Are we lost?

B: I think so. I wish we _____ a map with us today.

A. were bringing B. brought C. had brought D. would bring

3. **A:** What were you doing at three p.m. this afternoon?

B: I wish I _____ the answer of that question. I can't remember anything.

A. knew B. know C. could know D. would know

4. **A:** I told your mother that you had left your job.

B: Well, I wish you _____ her. It's none of your business.

A. wouldn't tell B. didn't tell C. hadn't told D. doesn't tell

5. **A:** I wish you _____ making that noise. It's bothering me.

- B:** Sorry, I'll stop it right now.
- A. would stop B. are going to stop C. stop D. can stop
6. **A:** These figures are too complicated to work out in your head.
B: Yes, _____ a calculator.
- A. I wish we would have B. if only we had
 C. if only we had had D. I wish we have
7. **A:** You look so tired.
B: Yes, I'm really sleepy today. I wish I _____ Bob to the airport late last night.
- A. didn't have to take B. weren't taking.
 B. hadn't had to take D. didn't take
8. **A:** It's raining. I wish it _____
B: Me too. If only the sun _____
- A. stopped/ shined B. would stop/ were shining.
 C. had stopped/ had shined D. would stop/ would shine
9. **A:** Did you study for that test?
B: No, but now I wish I _____ because I flunked it.
- A. had studied B. studied C. would study D. have studied
10. **A:** My feet are killing me! I wish I _____ more comfortable shoes.
B: Yeah, me too. I wish I _____ that we were going to have to walk this much.
- A. had worn/ knew B. am wearing/ had known
 C. were wearing/ would know D. wore/ had known

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 6: USED TO; BE/ GET USED TO + V-ING

1. Ôn tập lại cấu trúc Used to

1.1 Used to + Verb: Đã từng, từng. Chỉ một thói quen, một hành động thường xuyên xảy ra trong quá khứ và bây giờ không còn nữa.

Ví dụ:

I used to smoke a packet a day but I stopped two years ago.
 (trước đây tôi hút 1 gói thuốc 1 ngày nhưng từ 2 năm trở lại đây tôi không hút thuốc nữa) I used to drive to work but now I take the bus.
 (Trước đây tôi thường lái xe đi làm nhưng hiện nay tôi đi làm bằng xe buýt).

1.2 To be used to + V-ing/ Noun: Trở nên quen với..

Ví dụ:

I'm used to living on my own. I've done it for quite a long time.
 (Tôi thường ở 1 mình, và tôi đã ở một mình được một khoảng thời gian khá lâu).
 Hans has lived in England for over a year so he is used to driving on the left now.
 (Hans đã sống ở Anh hơn 1 năm rồi nên giờ anh ấy quen lái xe bên tay trái)

1.3 to get used to + V-ing/ noun: Đang quen với việc gì.

Ví dụ:

She has started working nights and is still getting used to sleeping during the day.
 (Cô ấy bắt đầu làm việc vào ban đêm và dần quen với việc ngủ suốt ngày).
 I have always lived in the country but now I'm beginning to get used to living in the city. (Tôi luôn sống ở miền quê nhưng giờ đây tôi bắt đầu dần quen với việc sống ở thành phố).

BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG

Exercise 1: Put the verbs in brackets into the forms.

- When I was a child, I (dream) _____ of being an astronaut.
- I'm terribly nervous. I (not speak) _____ to a large audience.
- It took us ages to (live) _____ in an apartment house.
- Lots of trains (stop) _____ here, but not many do now.
- (Nick/ not/ work) _____ on a building site when he was a child?
- I'll have an orange juice, please. I (not drink) _____ alcohol.
- David doesn't seem to mind being in hospital. I suppose he's (be) _____ there.
- When Laura was at college, she (have) _____ a picture of Elvis Presley on her bedroom wall.
- There (be) _____ a cinema here but it was knocked down a few years ago.
- When she arrived in Britain, she (not drive) _____ on the left, but she soon got used to it.

Exercise 2: Put the verbs in brackets into the forms.

- (work) _____ on a building site when he was young?

2. I will have an orange juice, please. I (not drink)_____alcohol.
3. When Laura was at college, she (have)_____a picture of Elvis Presley on her bedroom wall.
4. There (be)_____a cinema here but it was knocked down a few years ago.
5. When she arrived in Britain, she (not/drive)_____on the left, but she soon got used to it.
6. I (live)_____in Finland, but now I live in France.
7. I (sit)_____at this desk. I sit here every day.
8. People (believe)_____the earth was flat.
9. Trains (be)_____the main means of cross-continental travel. Today, most people take airplanes for long-distance travel.
10. Ms. Stanton's job requires her to travel extensively throughout the world. She (travel)_____by plane.

Exercise 3: Rewrite the sentences keeping the same meaning.

1. I had a lot of money but I lost it all when my business failed.
®
2. I quite like classical music now, although I wasn't keen on it when I was younger.
®
3. I seem have lost interest in my work.
®
4. My brother had his hair cut short when he joined the army.
®
5. Dennis gave up smoking three years ago.
®
6. My parents lived in the USA when they were young.
®
7. Jim was my best friend, but we aren't friends any more.
®
8. When he was younger, my uncle was a national swimming champion.
®
9. I eat ice-cream now, but I disliked eating it when I was a child.
®
10. I worked in London three years ago. Now I stay at home.
®

Exercise 4: Underline the mistake in each sentence.

1. He used to being fat but now he's thin
2. He isn't used to work in these bad conditions.
3. How did you getting used to working in the middle of this mess.
4. Did you used to write poems when you were young?
5. I need some time to be get used to living in this town.
6. Sting was used to be a teacher before he became a famous singer.
7. I'm not used to wash linen by hand.
8. She'll get used to be living in the extremely cold winter of Siberia.
9. My mother didn't use to drinking much coffee. But now she has become addicted to it.
10. There did used to be a lot of trees in this court yard. They have all been cut down.

Exercise 5: Underline the mistake in each sentence.

1. When I started to work here I needed a lot of help, but now I am used to do all the work on my own.
2. He used to reading several books a month, but he doesn't have time any more.
3. We were surprised to see her driving - she didn't use to drive when we first met her.
4. Don't worry, it's a simple program to use. You got used to it in no time, I'm sure.
5. When I have to commute to work every day I used to get up very early.
6. I'm afraid I'll never get use to living in this place. I simply don't like it and never will.
7. Whenever we came to Coventry we used always to stay in the Central Hotel. We loved it.
8. When Peter Smith was the head of our office everything was used to be well organized. Now it's total chaos here.
9. Mr. Lazy was shocked when he joined our busy company because he wasn't getting used to doing much work every day.
10. At first the employees didn't liked the new open-space office, but in the end they got used to it.

Exercise 6: Choose the correct answers.

1. When I was a child, I_____like ice-cream, but I don't like it now.

- A. am used to B. used to C. use D. am used for
2. Shampoo _____ washing your hair.
A. is used to B. gets used to C. is used for D. uses
3. I _____ wearing glasses.
A. am used to B. used to C. use D. am used for
4. We live in the capital now but we _____ live in a small village.
A. used to B. are used to C. use D. get used to
5. Gold _____ making jewelries.
A. gets used to B. uses C. used to D. is used for
6. Cheques and credit cards _____ storing wealth.
A. used to B. don't get used to C. is not used to D. is used for
7. The baby _____ getting up early.
A. used to B. don't get used to C. is not used to D. is used for
8. Jack doesn't smoke anymore but he _____ smoke 20 cigarettes a day.
A. uses B. is used to C. is used for D. used to
9. Money _____ buy food, furniture and other things.
A. is used for B. used to C. uses D. is used to
10. She usually _____ dictionary to find the meaning of difficult words.
A. is used to B. is used for C. used to D. uses

Exercise 7: Match each part in column A with each part in column B.

	A		B
1	I used to eat a lot of chocolate but	A	I often used to go to the theater.
2	Paul used to work in London but	B	now I find him a bit boring.
3	He used to take the train to work but	C	now I'm on a diet.
4	When I was younger, I didn't use to eat cheese but	D	now he drives.
5	When I lived in the city,	E	now he drives a very boring family car.
6	They used to go to a very traditional school	F	where they wore a uniform.
7	I used to really enjoy his company but	G	when we were children.
8	She used to play the piano but	H	now he works in Seattle.
9	We used to go to the beach for our holidays	I	now she plays the guitar
10	He used to have a motorbike but	J	now I eat a lot.

Your answer:

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.
6.	7.	8.	9.	10.

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 7: CÁC KIỂU CÂU ĐỀ NGHỊ (SUGGESTIONS)

Có nhiều cách để đưa ra một câu đề nghị trong tiếng Anh. Thông thường nhất là các mẫu câu sau:

Suggestions	Responses
- Let's + V ...	- Yes, let's. - Good idea. - That's a good idea.
- Shall we + V ...?	
- Why don't we/ you + V ...?	
- What about/ How about + V-ing/ Noun ...?	
- S + suggest + V-ing/ N...	
- S + suggest + S + should + V ...	

Ví dụ:

- Let's go fishing this weekend. (Ngày cuối tuần này chúng ta đi câu nhé.)
- Lets study together. (Chúng ta hãy cùng nhau học.)
- Let's help that old man. (Chúng ta hãy giúp ông ấy.)

- What about going to the library? (Chúng ta đến thư viện nhé.)
- What about practising speaking English? (Chúng ta tập nói tiếng Anh nhé.)
- Why don't we study together? (Chúng ta học chung với nhau nhé.)
- Why don't we go swimming, instead? (Thay vào đó chúng ta đi bơi nhé.)

BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG

Exercise 1: Choose the best option to complete the following sentences.

- Why don't we _____ a hiking trip tomorrow?
A. take B. taking C. to take
- It's boring. Let's _____ some sports.
A. playing B. to play C. play
- I want to buy some clothes. How about _____ shopping tonight?
A. go B. going C. to go
- I've bought a new pair of rackets. _____ playing badminton?
A. Shall we B. What about C. Let's
- There is a new interesting film on TV tonight. _____ you come and see with me?
A. Why don't B. Shall C. Should
- What should we do this weekend? _____ we go camping?
A. Why don't you B. How about C. Shall
- It's nice today. _____ go roller-skating.
A. How about B. Let's C. Shall
- It's so cold! _____ go to the cafe over there and get a hot drink.
A. Would you like B. What about C. Let's
- I'm so tired.
- _____ going sailing this weekend?
A. How about B. Let's C. Shall we
- There is a new swimming pool near our school. _____ go swimming tomorrow?
A. Why don't we B. Shall C. what about
- Why _____ go to a museum?
A. don't we B. don't we to C. don't
- Let's _____ for a meal.
A. to go out B. going out C. go out
- How about _____ this weekend?
A. to visit B. visit C. visiting friends
- Why _____ to the movies tonight?
A. don't go B. don't you go C. not you go
- _____ to the travel agent's this afternoon to book our ticket.
A. Let's going B. Let's to go C. Let's go

Exercise 2: Match each sentence in column A with each sentence in column B.

	A		B
1	Shall we go fishing?	A	That's very kind of you, but I really have to get back now.
2	Let's go for a walk.	B	What about taking part in a guitar class?
3	Why don't you stay here tonight?	C	How about staying at home and watching a romantic movie.
4	How about going to the movie?	D	It sounds great. I like movies.
5	Let's go bowling tonight.	E	That's a good idea.
6	I'm hungry.	F	Why don't you give her a doll?
7	It's raining now.	G	Sorry, I can't. I'm meeting a friend for dinner.
8	It's my friend's birthday next week.	H	Let's have a picnic.
9	The weather is nice.	I	Why don't you eat some cupcakes?
10	I'm interested in playing the guitar	J	Sorry, I don't think that is a good idea. It's too hot.

Your answer:

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.
6.	7.	8.	9.	10.

Exercise 3: Complete each sentence with one word.

- Hi, Alex. _____ you like to go to the cinema with me?
- _____ can we do this evening?
- We all love Chinese food so _____ about the restaurant in Oxford Street.
- It's warm and sunny; _____ go to the beach.
- I would like to go running. _____ you don't come with me?
- _____ meet at the gym at 5 o'clock.
- _____ celebrating your birthday at the pub?
- I have some free days; we _____ go to visit Amsterdam.
- I'm bored. _____ go to the bowling alley.
- Diana, I _____ that you tidy your bedroom.

Exercise 4: Complete the conversation with given words/ phrase.

Shall	How about	How about	How about	Let's
Let's	would you like to	Why don't you	Let's	How about

- Hey Jim, _____ go to the movies with us?
- So, we all want Italian, right? _____ that restaurant near the beach?
- What can we do this evening? _____ we watch the game in a bar?
- A: It's so hot in here! _____ open the window?
- Helen called and said she's going for a walk. _____ going with her?
- I'd like to do something different this weekend _____ go sailing!
- A: What shall we do?
B: I don't know... It's not very warm and it looks as if it's going to start raining _____ a play? I think there's a new one in the auditorium.
- A: Next month we have some days off. Is there anything special you want to do?
B: Yes!! _____ go to Madrid! The Cirque du Soleil's new show will be there that week!
- It's warm and sunny, _____ go roller-skating!
- A: Would you like to go shopping on Saturday?
B: I can't, I don't have much money right now. _____ hiking? The weather is really nice... and it's cheaper!

Exercise 5: Put the verbs in brackets into the correct forms.

- I suggest (play) _____ football in the schoolyard.
- His father suggests that he (go) _____ to Ha Long Bay this summer vacation.
- Tom suggested that we (help) _____ our mom make cakes.
- When we went out yesterday, my mom suggested (bring) _____ umbrella in case it rained.
- My sister suggests I (clean) _____ my room before my mother comes back.
- My teacher suggests that all students (finish) _____ all homework before class.
- His friends suggest he (take) _____ this opportunity to enhance his skills.
- "(be) _____ more careful", my mom suggested.
- Her boyfriend suggests (go) _____ to the cinema to relax at the weekend.
- It's warm, so I suggest (go) _____ swimming.
- It's snowing outside. My brother suggests (make) _____ a snowman.
- To prepare for the test, she suggests (study) _____ in the library.
- Tim suggested I (be) _____ creative and flexible in dealing with this problem.
- His teacher suggests that he (keep) _____ quiet in the class.
- Her friend suggested (look) _____ after the child more carefully.

Exercise 6: Underline the mistake in each sentence.

- Let's doing something nice at weekend.
- Why don't we to go to a movie this evening?
- Let's go not to the movie at weekend. It is always so crowded at that time.
- What don't we meet at the restaurant in front of the park?
- I don't think we should not be going to enjoy Chinese food.
- Let's go gets some coffee. I'm so sleepy.

7. I thinked your idea is fantastic.
8. She suggests me not to enroll in Harvard University.
9. Why don't me come with you tonight? It will be safer then.
10. How for having a supper? I'm hungry.

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 8: ADJ + TO V và ADJ + THAT + CLAUSE.

1. TÍNH TỪ + TO V:

+ Động từ nguyên mẫu (**to-infinitive**) thường được dùng:

- Sau các tính từ diễn tả phản ứng và cảm xúc như: *glad, sorry, sad, delighted, pleased, happy, afraid, anxious, surprised, shocked...*

Ví dụ:

- Tom was surprised to see you. (Tom ngạc nhiên khi thấy bạn.)
- He's afraid to stay home alone at night (Anh ấy sợ ở nhà một mình vào ban đêm.)
- I'm very pleased to see you here. (Tôi rất vui mừng được gặp anh ở đây.)
- I was sorry to hear that your father is ill. (Tôi lấy làm tiếc khi nghe rằng cha của anh bị ốm.)
- Sau một số tính từ thông dụng khác như: *right, wrong, easy, difficult, certain, welcome, careful, important, interesting, lovely, ready, lucky, likely, good, hard, dangerous, safe...*, và sau các tính từ trong cấu trúc *enough* và *too*.

Ví dụ:

- He is difficult to understand. (Anh ấy thật khó hiểu.)
- The apples are ripe enough to pick. (Những quả táo đã đủ chín để hái.)
- English is not difficult to learn. (Tiếng Anh thì không khó học.)
- Sau tính từ trong cấu trúc câu nhấn mạnh với chủ ngữ giả **It**: **It + be + adjective + to- infinitive**

Ví dụ:

- It's interesting to talk to you. (Nói chuyện với bạn thật là thú vị.)
- It's difficult to learn Japanese. (Học tiếng Nhật thì rất khó.)

2. ADJECTIVE + THAT-CLAUSE

+ Mệnh đề danh từ (**noun clause**) thường được dùng với các tính từ diễn tả xúc cảm, sự lo lắng, sự tin tưởng,... Ví dụ: *delighted, glad, pleased, relieved, sorry, afraid, anxious, worried, confident, certain, surprising...*

ü Cấu trúc chung: **Subject + be + adjective + that-clause**

Ví dụ:

- I am delighted that you passed your exam. (Tôi rất vui vì anh đã vượt qua kỳ thi.)
- It was quite surprising that he passed the examination. (Thật đáng ngạc nhiên là anh ấy đã thi đậu.)
- I am afraid that I can't accept this assignment. (Tôi e rằng tôi không thể nhận nhiệm vụ này.)

BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG

Exercise 1: Complete the sentences with available words.

see	explain	call	feel	learn
go	play	eat	invest	complete

1. It is normal to _____ tired after a long trip.
2. It is difficult to _____ the piano well.
3. It is impossible to _____ this project in 24 hours.
4. It is not unusual to _____ traffic jams in Hanoi.
5. It would be awkward to _____ him again.
6. It is not easy to _____ Japanese.
7. It is difficult to _____ some grammatical rules.
8. It was important to _____ clean and healthy food.
9. It is dangerous to _____ out after midnight.
10. It is risky to _____ too much money on lottery.

Exercise 2: Match each pair of sentences below, using structure S1 + be + adjective + that + S2 + V. The first one has been done for you as an example.

0. He was shocked. He'd failed his exam.

He was shocked that he'd failed his exam.

1. They were excited. Their friend had given birth to a beautiful baby.

®

2. I'm quite pleased. You keep your promise.

®

3. We're happy. She had a successful surgery.

- ④
4. I was shocked. She married a shorter man than her.
- ④
5. She was upset. He had left without saying goodbye.
- ④
6. She was quite confident. Everything would go as planned.
- ④
7. He is proud. His daughter has so much talent.
- ④
8. I'm sorry. I can't join with you.
- ④
9. I'm afraid. The tickets have been sold out.
- ④
10. He was surprised. She pretended not to recognize him.

Exercise 3: Match each pair of sentences below, using structure S1 + be + adjective + that + S2 + V.

- ④
1. We are delighted. Everyone enjoys our homemade cakes.
- ④
2. He is so pleased. His parents are waiting at the school gate to take him home.
- ④
3. I am so happy. My brother got a safe flight.
- ④
4. We are afraid. We can't join the party with you.
- ④
5. I'm so sorry. I lost your favorite pen on my way home.
- ④
6. Thu was anxious. She has lost her identity card.
- ④
7. She is certain. Her son will be accepted to a high school for the gifted.
- ④
8. My father is upset. My brother wants to drop out of high school.
- ④
9. He is amazed. His colleagues celebrate his birthday in a fun way.
- ④
10. She was worried. Her father's surgery would be unsuccessful.

Exercise 4: Circle the correct answers.

1. I am **grateful/ afraid** that my teacher helps me improve my English quickly.
2. She was very **helpful/ disappointed** that he didn't keep his promise.
3. Tuan is **angry/ glad** that his parents live happily together.
4. They are not **happy/ unhappy** that they have to pay much money to buy food.
5. My sister was **angry/ delighted** that her boyfriend was too late to pick her up.
6. Everyone is **amazed/ unlucky** that we won the first prize.
7. I am **important/ proud** that I am Vietnamese.
8. He is **pleased/ sad** that his child waters the tree every morning.
9. We were **thankful/ worried** that we missed the last bus.
10. I am **wrong/ interesting** that I sincerely believe in what people say.
11. He was **grateful/ true** that she didn't tell his parents about the accident.
12. The teacher is very **delighted/ afraid** that her students are very hard-working.
13. I'm not **unhappy/ surprised** that a robber can do everything to rob money or properties.
14. She is **relieved/ disappointed** that her English result is not bad.
15. He was **frightened/ lucky** that he didn't suffer any side effects of drug overuse.

Exercise 5: Match each part in column A with each part in column B.

	A		B
1	The Smiths are delighted that	A	Our neighbor always makes loud noise at night.
2	We are very angry that	B	Their salaries are paid on time.

3	She was worried that	C	Her motorbike is going to run out of gas.
4	He is amazed that	D	She couldn't meet the deadline.
5	The policeman is happy that	E	I have a bought a bad mobile phone.
6	She is afraid that	F	They are blessed with excellent health and five lovely children.
7	My little son is sorry that	G	My younger brother returned safely after being kidnapped.
8	I'm thankful that	H	He finally arrested the murderer.
9	The employees are glad that	I	He has broken the vase.
10	I am disappointed that	J	His ex-girlfriend still remembers his birthday.

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.
6.	7.	8.	9.	10.

Exercise 6: Write sentences using available words.

- difficult/ I/guess what will happen
®
- impossible/ we/do this project in 24 hours
®
- important/take a break twice a day
®
- exciting/ we/take part in this party
®
- likely/ it/get cold in the library
®
- hard/know when a rat will get loose
®
- good idea/put on your lab coat
®
- pleasure/ we/have you here
®
- honor/ we/work in this lab
®
- pity/ your sister/not to participate in the competition
®

Exercise 7: Match each pair of sentences. The first one has been done for you as an example.

- He's very scared. He can't move.
He's too scared to move.
- The pie is very hot. You can't eat it.
®
- He's very sick. He can't leave the hospital.
®
- The ice is dangerously thin. You can't walk on it.
®
- He's very busy. He can't take a break.
®
- The grass is extremely high. I can't mow it.
®
- It's early. He can't go to bed yet.
®
- The chair is very heavy. He can't lift it.
®
- He's so tired. He can't do his homework.
®

9. These tomatoes are still green. You can't pick them yet.

®

10. He's very old. He can't go to elementary school.

®

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 9: TỪ ĐỊNH LƯỢNG (QUANTIFIER)

- Từ định lượng là những từ dùng để đề cập đến số lượng

- Một số từ và cụm từ chỉ số lượng lớn và nhỏ là:

Quantitative words	Meaning
a lot of / lots of	nhiều
a great deal of	nhiều
a large amount of	nhiều
a few	một ít
few	ít
a little	một ít
little	ít
many	nhiều
much	nhiều

1. A lot of / lots of, many và much Những

từ này đề cập đến số lượng lớn:

- **A lot of** và **lots of** được dùng với danh từ số nhiều hoặc danh từ không đếm được trong câu xác định.

Ví dụ:

- There are a lot of bananas in the fridge.
- Learning a foreign language needs lots of time.

- **Many** được dùng với danh từ số nhiều và **much** dùng trước danh từ không đếm được

Ví dụ:

- I do not have many French books.
- Schools leavers do not give much thought to the jobs of their choice.

- **Many** và **Much** cũng có thể được dùng sau các từ *very, so, too, as* và *how* trong câu xác định, câu phủ định và câu hỏi.

- She put too much salt in the soup.
- He made so many mistakes in his writing.
- How much of the roof needs repairing?
- How many students are there in your class?

- **A great deal of / a large amount of** được dùng với danh từ không đếm được

Ví dụ: A great deal of learners' attention should be paid to the uses of English tenses.

A large number of được dùng với danh từ số nhiều

Ví dụ: A large number of rare animals disappear nowadays.

2. A few, few, a little và little

A few và **a little** đề cập đến số lượng nhỏ. Những từ này được dùng chủ yếu trong câu xác định. **A few** được dùng trước danh từ số nhiều và **a little** dùng trước danh từ không đếm được.

Ví dụ:

- There are a few students in the room.
- There is a little sugar in the jar.
- **Few** và **little** mang nghĩa phủ định

Ví dụ:

- I feel sorry for her. She has few friends. (She has almost no friend)
(Tôi thấy đáng tiếc cho cô ấy. Cô ấy hầu như không có bạn bè.)
- I have little money. I don't even have enough money to buy food for dinner. (I have almost no money)
(Tôi cạn túi rồi. Thậm chí tôi không còn đủ tiền để mua thức ăn tối nữa)

BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG

Exercise 1: Complete the sentences with *some* or *any*.

1. We didn't buy _____ flowers.
2. This evening I'm going out with _____ friends of mine.
3. I didn't have _____ money, so I had to borrow
4. Can I have _____ milk on my coffee, please?

5. I was too tired to do _____ work.
6. Have you seen _____ good films recently?
7. Can you give me _____ information about places of interest in the town?
8. With the special tourist train ticket, you can travel on _____ train you like.
9. If there are _____ words you don't understand, use a dictionary.
10. She went out without _____ money.

Exercise 2: Complete the conversation. Put in *many* or *much*.

Matthew: There are (1) _____ athletes taking part in the International Games in London. There's been (2) _____ coverage in the papers.

Daniel: Our runners haven't won (3) _____ medals, have they?

Matthew: No, not as (4) _____ as last time. But there is plenty of time. There are still (5) _____ events to come. I'd like to go and see some of the track events, but I haven't got (6) _____ time at the moment.

Daniel: No, not with exams coming up. We're having so (7) _____ lessons to study. There is still having so (8) _____ work to prioritize.

Matthew: I'm hoping to go at the weekend if I can get a ticket. Apparently there aren't (9) _____ seats left.

Daniel: I've heard the cheapest tickets are \$25, I think that's too (10) _____

Exercise 3: Put in *a few*, *few*, *a little* or *little*.

1. I don't think I can lift this box on my own. I need _____ help.
2. _____ tourists visited Northern Ireland in the 1980s because of the terrorism there.
3. The postman doesn't often come here. We receive _____ letters.
4. The snow was quite deep. There seemed _____ hope of completing our journey.
5. Trevor doesn't find it easy to fix the shelves. He's having _____ trouble.
6. Very _____ people knew about it, just you and me.
7. The forces were unequal, they were many, we were _____
8. Much heard about the book, but _____ read it.
9. He is a man of _____ words
10. I could speak _____ Swedish, but I wasn't very fluent.

Exercise 4: Choose the correct answers.

1. We didn't take _____ photographs when we were on holiday.
A. much B. a lot of C. many of D. a great deal of
2. _____ the students in my class enjoy taking part in social activities.
A. Most of B. Most C. Many D. The number of
3. He's always busy. He has _____ time to relax.
A. much B. little C. a little D. plenty of
4. She put so _____ salt in the soup that she couldn't have it. It was too salty.
A. many B. little C. much D. a little
5. We had a boring holiday. _____ the time we lay on the beach.
A. Most B. Much C. Most of D. Many of
6. How _____ students are there in your class?
A. little B. few C. much D. many
7. I feel sorry for her. She has _____ friends.
A. many B. a few C. few D. a great deal of
8. I spent _____ my spare time gardening last year.
A. most of B. most C. many of D. a large number of
9. He doesn't have so _____ friends as I think.
A. much B. a great deal of C. many D. a large number of
10. With only _____ hope, Harry didn't know how to keep going another day.
A. little B. a little C. few D. a few

Exercise 5: Choose the correct answers.

1. How _____ money have you got?
A. many B. much C. a lot of D. a great deal of
2. I think _____ you are very tired after your long journey.
A. many B. much C. many of D. much of
3. There isn't _____ shampoo in the bathroom.
A. any B. some C. little D. few
4. Would you like _____ tea?

- A. many B. some C. a few D. any
5. The mixture looks rather dry. Maybe you should add _____ water.
A. a few B. few C. a little D. little
6. We're having a big party. We've invited _____ friends.
A. a lot of B. much C. many of D. no
7. Could I try _____ wine?
A. few B. a few C. little D. a little
8. Don't drink _____ wine. It's bad for your health.
A. so much B. a few C. so many D. many
9. Is there _____ water in the glass?
A. lots of B. some C. many D. any
10. Can you speak French? - Yes, _____
A. a few B. few C. a little D. little

Exercise 6: Complete the sentences with suitable quantifiers.

- I have _____ money, not enough to buy groceries.
- She has _____, enough to buy a ticket.
- There is too _____ traffic on the street at rush hours.
- There were too _____ people in the hall last night.
- Do you know _____ people in this neighborhood?
- Let's go and have a drink, we have _____ time left, enough for a cup of coffee.
- My village has been modernized, _____ the house has a telephone.
- There are four books on the table. _____ of them has a different color.
- 29/30 students in my class is male. In other words, _____ of the students in my class is male.
- You should strive _____ more to get progress in study.

Exercise 7: Decide if each quantifier is correct or incorrect.

1. She has a few books, not enough for conferences.	..
2. He bought much furniture for her new apartment which she has bought recently.	..
3. Any of the people I work with are very friendly.	..
4. It is so sad that no of these money is mine.	..
5. Would you like something to it?	..
6. The audience clapped their hands so much times that the singer had to sing again.	..
7. We must be quick. There is few time left.	..
8. You should reach every sentence carefully.	..
9. I have got so many news to tell you today.	..
10. I don't have any friends in Hanoi.	..
11. We didn't buy a flowers yesterday.	..
12. There is somebody at the door. Let's go and see who it is.	..
13. Let me know if you need two help.	..
14. I have a large number of money, but I am not happy.	..
15. Most the house in this village are built of bricks.	..

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 10: CÁC LOẠI CÂU ĐIỀU KIỆN
(TYPES OF CONDITIONAL)

1. Bảng tóm tắt các loại câu điều kiện và cách sử dụng.

Type (Dạng câu)	Forms and examples (Cấu trúc và ví dụ)	Usage (Cách sử dụng)
0	If + S + V(s/es), s+ V(s/es)/ câu mệnh lệnh Ví dụ: If you put water in the fridge, it turns into ice. (Nếu bạn cho nước vào tủ lạnh, nó hóa thành đá.) If you heat ice, it turns into water. (Nếu bạn đun nóng đá, nó hóa thành nước)	Diễn tả một chân lý, một sự thật hiển nhiên
1	If + S + V(s/es), S + will/ can/ shall ... + V Ví dụ: If I get good mark, my parents will be very happy. (Nếu tôi đạt điểm tốt, bố mẹ tôi sẽ rất vui) If you don't do your homework, your teacher will punish you. (Nếu bạn không làm bài tập, cô giáo của bạn sẽ phạt bạn)	Diễn tả điều có thể xảy ra ở hiện tại hoặc tương lai
2	If + S + V2/ Ved, S + would/ could/ should ...+ V Ví dụ: If I were a billionaire, I would travel around the world. (I am not a billionaire.) (Nếu tôi là một tỉ phú, tôi sẽ đi du lịch khắp thế giới.) (tôi không phải là một tỉ phú.) If he had experience, he could join our group. (He doesn't have experience) (Nếu anh ấy có kinh nghiệm, anh ấy có thể tham gia nhóm của chúng tôi) (Anh ta không có kinh nghiệm.)	Diễn tả điều không có thật ở hiện tại
3	If + S + Had + V3/Ved, S + would/ could + have + V3/Ved Ví dụ: If she had passed the exam, she would have had a new computer. (She didn't pass the exam.) (Nếu cô ấy vượt qua kỳ thi, cô ấy sẽ có một chiếc máy tính mới.) (Cô ấy không vượt qua kỳ thi.) If Mary had finished her homework, she would have gone out with us. (Mary didn't finish her homework) (Nếu Mary đã hoàn thành bài tập về nhà, cô ấy sẽ đi chơi với chúng mình.) (Mary chưa hoàn thành bài tập về nhà)	Diễn tả điều không có thật trong quá khứ
Hỗn hợp	If + S + had + V3/Ved, S + would + V Ví dụ: If you had sent the letter yesterday, I would receive it today. (You didn't sent the letter yesterday.)	Diễn tả điều không có thật trong quá khứ và điều không có thật ở hiện tại

	(Nếu bạn đã gửi thư ngày hôm qua, tôi sẽ nhận được nó hôm nay.) If she had told me her plan, I would give her money. (She didn't told me her plan.) (Nếu cô ấy bảo tôi về kế hoạch của cô ấy, tôi sẽ đưa tiền cho cô ấy.) (Cô ấy không bảo tôi về kế hoạch của cô ấy.)	
--	--	--

2. Những điểm cần lưu ý.

- Trong câu điều kiện loại 1, ***"If... not"*** có thể được thay bằng ***"unless"*** (trừ phi):

Ví dụ: We will be late if we don't hurry.

® We will be late unless we hurry.

Ví dụ: If I have time, I can help you.

® Unless I have time, I can't help you.

- **Bỏ if trong 3 loại câu điều kiện (phải có đảo ngữ)**

Ví dụ: If it should be necessary, I will go.

® Should it be necessary, I will go.

Ví dụ: If I were rich, I would buy a new car.

® Were I rich, I would buy a new car.

Ví dụ: If you had asked me, I would have told you the answer.

® Had you asked me, I would have told you the answer.

- Một số từ/ cụm từ có thể thay cho *if* với nghĩa tương đương:

provided that/ so(as) long as (miễn là)/ in case (trong trường hợp)/ on condition that (với điều kiện)

Ví dụ: You can borrow my book provided that you promise to bring it back.

= You can borrow my book if you promise to bring it back.

BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG

Exercise 1: Put the verbs in brackets into the correct forms.

- If I (know)_____ that you were ill, I (go)_____ to see you.
- I (see)_____ him if I (go)_____ to the party last night.
- What _____ (you/ do) if you _____ (be) him?
- If I (make)_____ that mistake again, my teacher _____ (get) angry with me.
- If he (go)_____ to London yesterday, he (meet)_____ his old friend.
- My dog (bark)_____ if it (hear)_____ any strange sound.
- If you (not go)_____ away, I (send)_____ the police.
- If I (be)_____ in your police. I (accept)_____ Mr. Anderson's invitation.
- I was busy. If I (have)_____ free time. I (go)_____ to the cinema with you.
- Why didn't you attend the meeting?
Oh, I didn't know. If I (know)_____, I (come)_____ there.

Exercise 2: Put the verbs in brackets into the correct forms.

- It is too bad Helen isn't here. If she (be)_____ here, she (know)_____ what to do.
- If I (not eat)_____ breakfast tomorrow morning, I (get)_____ hungry during class.
- If you (put)_____ this red button, the TV will (turn off)_____.
- I (let)_____ you know if I (find)_____ out what's happening.
- He didn't listen to the teacher. If he (listen)_____ carefully, he (perform)_____ well in the examination.
- He's waiting for his mother to come back from Chicago. If his mother (come) _____ home, he (have)_____ a lot of presents.
- He wanted to buy some Christmas presents but he couldn't. If he (afford)_____ to buy, his children (be)_____ very happy to greet a new year.
- It (be)_____ quicker if you (use)_____ a computer.
- (bring)_____ him another cake if he (not/like)_____ this one.
- She (be)_____ angry if she (bear)_____ this tomorrow.

Exercise 3: Rewrite the sentences keeping the same meaning.

- He can't go out because he has to study for his exam.
®
- She is lazy so she can't pass the exam.
®
- He will pay me tonight; I will have enough money to buy a car.

®
4. He smokes too much; that's why he can't get rid of his cough.

®
5. She is very shy; so she doesn't enjoy the party.

®
6. I will get a work permit. I will stay for another month.

®
7. He doesn't take any exercises. He is so unhealthy.

®
8. We can't get the ticket because I don't have the right change.

®
9. Study hard or you won't pass the exam.

®
10. Don't be impatient or you will make mistakes.

®
Exercise 4: Rewrite the sentences keeping the same meaning.

1. I didn't eat lunch, I feel hungry now.

®
2. I only come if they invite me.

®
3. He didn't revise all his lessons, he failed the exam.

®
4. I did not know you were coming, so I did not meet you at the airport.

®
5. I live too far from my office. I am not in time for work.

®
6. The children don't go to school in the snowy weather.

®
7. He died when he was so young, otherwise, he would be a famous musician by now.

®
8. You must tell me the whole truth or I won't help you.

®
9. The car breaks down so often because you don't take good care of it.

®
10. She got married at such an early age; otherwise, she would be at university now.

®
Exercise 5: Use UNLESS instead of IF.

1. If you do not study hard, you will fail the exam.

®
2. If you do not like this one, I will bring you another.

®
3. If she does not hurry, she will be late.

®
4. If you are not careful, you will cut yourself.

®
5. If you had not sneezed, he would not have known that we were there.

®
6. If you do not work harder, you will be sacked because of your laziness.

®
7. If there had not been the heavy storm, the climbers will not have died.

®
8. She has found that nobody can help her if she did not try her best to do it herself.

®
9. If you don't know how to spell a word, you should look it up in the dictionary.

®
10. The campfire would have been cancelled if it hadn't rained last night.

®
Exercise 6: Choose the correct answers.

1. If that hat costs much, I _____ a small one.
A. would have bought B. will buy
C. bought D. would buy
2. If you _____ more carefully, you would not have had so many accident.
A. drive B. drove C. had driven D. has driven
3. "Tom _____ more races if the trained hard." The man said.
A. would win B. wins C. would have won D. would be winning
4. If I spoke English, my job _____ a lot easier.
A. was B. were C. will be D. would be
5. "If you feel like a chat, _____." David said to me.
A. phone to me tonight B. will you phone me tonight
C. phoned me tonight D. phone me tonight
6. I will lend them some money if they _____ me.
A. ask B. will ask C. asked D. had asked
7. If we had known who he was, we _____ him to speak at our meeting.
A. would have invited B. have invited
C. will invite D. would invite
8. "If you _____ too much junk food, you would be a lot fitter." Mother said.
A. ate B. didn't eat C. didn't ate D. had eaten
9. If I _____ enough money. I would buy a house.
A. had B. had had C. will have D. have
10. They _____ you in if you come late.
A. won't let B. not let C. wouldn't let D. hadn't let

Exercise 7: Choose the correct answers.

1. I'm sure he would mind if we _____ early.
A. arrive B. arriving C. arrived D. had arrived
2. We _____ you if we have time.
A. will phone B. would phone C. phoned D. had phoned
3. If I won the lottery, I _____ you half the money.
A. gave B. had given C. will give D. would give
4. It _____ be a pity if she married Fred.
A. will B. would C. can D. may
5. If I am free on Saturday, I _____ to the mountains.
A. to go B. could go C. went D. can go
6. She _____ a nervous breakdown if she goes on like this.
A. will has B. had C. will have D. have
7. I know I'll feel better if I _____ smoking.
A. will stop B. stop C. stopped D. had stopped
8. I could have understood him if he _____ more slowly.
A. speaks B. spoke C. had spoken D. would speak
9. He didn't listen to the teacher. If he _____ carefully, he _____ will in the examination.
A. had listened/ would have performed B. listened/ would perform
C. listens/ will performed D. had listened/ had performed
10. If I knew his address, I _____ round and see him.
A. go B. will go C. went D. would go

Exercise 8: Underline the incorrect part in each sentence.

1. If we will reduce the speed of population growth, there will be less pressure on the earth.
2. Unless we leave a bowl of water under the sun, it will evaporate.
3. If we continue to use fuels at the current rate, we would soon have to face a fuel crisis.
4. If I am 10 centimeters taller. I would play basketball.
5. If the doctors could find in the remedy, a lot of people would be saved.
6. If she bought that house now, she ran out of money.
7. What you would do if you could speak French well?
8. If I had known he is not at home. I wouldn't have gone all the way to his house.
9. If I had known that the road were flooded, I would never have taken that way.
10. If I were you, I will go to the dentist's and have the tooth checked.

Exercise 9: Underline the incorrect part in each sentence.

1. If Lucia had been here now, she would find out the truth about her uncle's accident.

2. If a student takes a course on Computer Science, it will take him four years doing the course.
3. Unless it did not rain, Peter would pay us a visit.
4. If I had I known you were in financial difficulty, I would have helped you.
5. If I had knew the time when the match started, I would have told you.
6. If she had finished the work, she can go home.
7. If I had spoken more confident at the interview, they would have offered me the job.
8. If we had had a map, we would not be lost yesterday.
9. Had I known Alice's address, I would write to her.
10. If I had realized that the traffic lights were red, I would stop.

Exercise 10: Use conversion to rewrite the sentences.

1. If I were in your place, I would make a trip to England.
(R)
2. If he hadn't wasted too much time, he wouldn't have failed in his examination last year.
(R)
3. If the car we saw yesterday had been larger, we would have bought it.
(R)
4. If I were you, I would save some of your lottery winning.
(R)
5. If I had taken the English course you offered, I would have made much progress.
(R)
6. If my grandmother were five years younger, she would play games with us.
(R)
7. If you had not been so busy lately, I would have shown you how to play bowling.
(R)
8. Look at those red curtains. Your room would look better if those curtains were blue.
(R)
9. If we had chosen to live in a town instead of a city in 2010, we would not have had that many health problems.
(R)
10. If I were thinner, I would look more attractive.
(R)

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 11: MẠO TỪ: A, AN, THE (ARTICLE: A, AN, THE)

1. Cách sử dụng mạo từ không xác định "A" và "An"

Dùng "a" hoặc "an" trước một danh từ đếm được số ít (singular nouns). Chúng có nghĩa là một. Chúng được dùng trong câu có tính khái quát hoặc đề cập đến một chủ thể chưa được đề cập từ trước.

Ex: A ball is round. (Trái bóng tròn - nghĩa chung chung, khái quát, chỉ tất cả các quả bóng)

Mạo từ "a"	Mạo từ "an"
Dùng "an" với: Mạo từ "an" được dùng trước từ bắt đầu bằng nguyên âm (trong cách phát âm, chứ không phải trong cách viết). Bao gồm: - Các từ bắt đầu bằng các nguyên âm a, e, i, o, u - Ex: an aircraft, an empty glass, an object - Một số từ bắt đầu bằng u, y - Ex: an uncle, an umbrella - Một số từ bắt đầu bằng h câm - Ex: an heir, haft an hour - Các từ mở đầu bằng một số chữ viết tắt - Ex: an S.O.S/ an M.P	Dùng "a" với: - Dùng "a" trước các từ bắt đầu bằng một phụ âm. Chúng bao gồm các chữ cái còn lại và một số trường hợp bắt đầu bằng u, y, h - Ex: a house, a university, a home party, a heavy load, a uniform, a union, a year income,... - Đứng trước một danh từ mở đầu bằng "uni", "eu" phải dùng "a" - Ex: a university, a uniform, a universal, a union, Europe,

2. Cách dùng mạo từ xác định "The"

- Dùng "the" trước một danh từ đã được xác định cụ thể về mặt tính chất, đặc điểm, vị trí hoặc đã được đề cập đến trước đó, hoặc những khái niệm phổ thông, ai cũng biết

Ex: The boy in the corner is my friend

(Cậu bé đứng ở góc đường là bạn tôi - Cả người nói và người nghe đều biết đó là "cậu bé" nào)

Sau đây là một số trường hợp sử dụng "the" và không sử dụng "the" thường gặp.

Có "The"	Không "The"
Dùng trước tên các đại dương, sông ngòi, biển, vịnh và các cụm hồ (số nhiều) <i>Ex: The Red Sea, the Atlantic Ocean, the Persian Gulf, the Great Lakes</i>	Trước tên một hồ <i>Ex: Lake Geneva, Xuan Huong lake</i>
Trước tên các dãy núi <i>Ex: The Rocky Mountains, The Everest Mountains</i>	Trước tên một ngọn núi <i>Ex: Mount Vesuvius, Mount Langbiang</i>
Trước tên những vật thể duy nhất trong vũ trụ hoặc trên thế giới <i>Ex: The earth, the moon, the sun</i>	Trước tên các hành tinh hoặc các chòm sao <i>Ex: Venus, Mars</i>
The schools, colleges, universities + of + danh từ riêng <i>Ex: The University of Florida</i>	Trước tên các trường này nếu trước nó là một tên riêng <i>Ex: Stetson University, Dalat University</i>
The + số thứ tự + danh từ <i>Ex: The third chapter (chương thứ ba)</i>	Trước các danh từ đi cùng với một số đếm <i>Ex: Chapter three (chương ba) Word War One (Thế chiến thứ Nhất)</i>
Trước tên các cuộc chiến tranh khu vực với điều kiện tên khu vực đó phải được tính từ hoá <i>Ex: The Korean War, The American Civil War (cuộc nội chiến Mỹ)</i>	Trước tên các nước chỉ có một từ <i>Ex: China, France, Venezuela, Vietnam</i>
Trước tên các nước có hai từ trở lên (ngoại trừ Great Britain) <i>Ex: The United States, The Central African Republic (Cộng hòa Trung Phi)</i>	Trước tên các nước mở đầu bằng New, một tính từ chỉ hướng: <i>Ex: New Zealand, North Korean</i>
Trước tên các nước được coi là một quần đảo hoặc một quần đảo <i>Ex: The Philippines, The Virgin Islands, The Hawaii</i>	Trước tên các lục địa, tỉnh, tiểu bang, thành phố, quận, huyện: <i>Ex: Europe, Florida</i>
Trước tên các tài liệu hoặc sự kiện lịch sử <i>Ex: The Constitution (Hiến pháp)</i>	Trước tên bất kì môn thể thao nào <i>Ex: baseball, basketball</i>
Trước tên các nhóm dân tộc thiểu số <i>Ex: The Indians</i>	Trước các danh từ trừu tượng (trừ một số trường hợp đặc biệt): <i>Ex: freedom, happiness</i>
Trước tên các nhạc cụ khi đề cập đến các nhạc cụ đó nói chung hoặc khi chơi các nhạc cụ đó <i>Ex: The violin is difficult to play.</i>	Trước tên các môn học nói chung <i>Ex: Mathematics (Toán học)</i>
	Trước tên các ngày lễ, tết <i>Ex: Christmas, Thanksgiving (Lễ Tạ Ơn)</i>
	Trước tên các loại hình nhạc cụ trong các hình thức âm nhạc cụ thể (Jazz, Rock, classical music..) <i>Ex: To perform jazz on trumpet and piano (Biểu diễn nhạc Jazz bằng kèn và đàn piano)</i>

BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG

Exercise 1: Choose the correct answers.

- We are looking for _____ place to spend
A. the/the B. a/the C. a/ a D. the/ a
- Please turn off _____ light when you leave _____ room.

- A. the/the B. a/a C. the/ a D. a/ the
3. We are looking for people with _____ experience.
A. the B. a C. an D. Æ
4. Would you pass me _____ salt, please?
A. a B. the C. am D. Æ
5. Can you show me _____ way to _____ station?
A. the/the B. a/ a C. the/ a D. a/ the
6. She has read _____ interesting book.
A. a B. an C. the D. Æ
7. You'll get _____ shock if you touch _____ live wire with that screwdriver.
A. an/ the B. Æ/ the C. a/ a D. an/ the
8. Mr. Smith is _____ old customer and _____ honest man.
A. an/ the B. the/ an C. an/ an D. the/ the
9. _____ youngest boy has just started going to _____ school.
A. a/ Æ B. x/ the C. an/ Æ D. the/ Æ
10. Do you go to _____ prison to visit him?
A. the B. a C. Æ D. an

Exercise 2: Choose the correct answers.

1. _____ eldest boy is at _____ college.
A. a/ the B. the/ Æ C. Æ/ a D. an/ Æ
2. Are you going away next week? No, _____ week after next.
A. an B. a C. the D. Æ
3. Would you like to hear _____ story about _____ English scientist?
A. an/ the B. the/ the C. a/ the D. a/ an
4. There'll always be a conflict between _____ old and _____ young.
A. the/the B. an/a C. an/ the D. the/ a
5. There was _____ collision at _____ corner.
A. the/a B. an/the C. a/the D. the/ the
6. My mother thinks that this is _____ expensive shop.
A. the B. an C. a D. Æ
7. Like many women, she loves _____ parties and _____ gifts.
A. the/ a B. a/ the C. a/ a D. Æ/ Æ
8. She works seven days _____ week.
A. a B. the C. an D. Æ
9. My mother goes to work in _____ morning.
A. a B. Æ C. the D. an
10. I am on night duty. When you go to _____ bed, I go to _____ work.
A. a/ Æ B. a/ the C. the/ Æ D. Æ/ Æ

Exercise 3: Complete the sentences with suitable articles.

1. My birthday is _____ Sunday afternoon.
2. It doesn't often snow here at _____ Christmas. We haven't had _____ White Christmas for many years.
3. We came here in _____ summer of _____ 1969.
4. Are you doing anything at _____ weekend?
5. Rita plays _____ violin and her sister plays _____ piano.
6. On our trip to _____ Spain, we crossed _____ Atlantic Ocean.
7. David attended _____ Princeton University.
8. _____ Florida State University is smaller than _____ University of Florida.
9. _____ chair that you are sitting in is broken.
10. _____ Civil War was fought in _____ US between 1861 and 1865.

Exercise 4: Complete the sentences with suitable articles.

1. Jack has got _____ very long legs, so he's _____ fast runner.
2. You need _____ visa to visit _____ foreign countries, but not all of them.
3. I'm going to _____ supermarket to do some shopping.
4. Jane is _____ teacher. Her parents were _____ teachers too.
5. John is _____ teacher. Every morning, he gets up at 7 o'clock, has _____ breakfast and

_____cup of _____coffee.

6. Jimmy has _____sister in Oxford and _____brother in _____London.

7. Can you think _____rich should pay more taxes to help _____.

8. When we reached _____city centre, some shops were still open but most of them were already closed.

9. How much are those potatoes? 1.20 _____kilo.

10. My father went out to _____sea when he was 14.

Exercise 5: Choose the correct answers.

1. The British Prime Minister live in **Downing Street/ the Downing Street**.

2. One of the nicest parks in London is **St. James's Park/ the St. James's Park**, which is very near **Buckingham Palace/ the Buckingham Palace**.

3. Frank is a student at **Liverpool University/ the Liverpool University**.

4. Mr. Jenkins reads **Daily Telegraph/ the Daily Telegraph** but his wife reads **Times/ the Times**.

5. We flew from London to **Orly Airport/ the Orly Airport** in Paris.

6. Mary and Peter got married in **St. Matthew's Church/ the Matthew's Church**.

7. In Britain **coffee/ the coffee** is more expensive than tea/ the tea.

8. After leaving **school/ the school**, Nora worked as a cleaner **in hospital/ at the hospital**.

9. All over the world, people are in **prison/ the prison** because of their political beliefs.

10. The other day the fire-brigade had to go to **prison/ the prison** to put out a fire.

Exercise 6: Complete the sentences with *a/ an/ one*.

1. It weights over _____hundred kilos.

2. I only asked for _____pizza - I didn't want three of them.

3. I wouldn't allow _____child of mine to be treated in that way.

4. It only took us _____week to drive to Greece.

5. I've always wanted to own _____silver-coloured car.

6. _____sandwich isn't enough. I usually eat four or five.

7. Policies differ from _____state to another.

8. Less than three quarters of _____hour later, she was home.

9. All of the competitors completed the race, with just _____exception.

10. The best way to learn _____musical instrument is to find _____enthusiastic teacher.

Exercise 7: Complete the paragraph with *the* or *a*.

(1) _____Danube is Austria's longest river. Our uncle lives on (2) _____Philippines. (3) _____Jamaica belongs to the Caribbean islands. (4) _____Statue of Liberty was dedicated in 1886. (5) _____Taj Mahal is one of India's most popular attractions. (6) _____Dead Sea lies below sea level. (7) _____Everglades National Park is in Florida. Aconcagua is the highest mountain outside Asia. (8) _____Mount Fuji is one of Japan's Three Holy Mountains. (9) _____Lake Superior is the largest of (10) _____Great Lakes.

Exercise 8: Complete the paragraph with suitable articles.

I arrived in (1) _____USA last Monday. We left (2) _____Rome, flew over the Alps and made a quick stop in (3) _____London. There we went shopping at (4) _____Harrods, visited (5) _____Tower and enjoyed a sunny afternoon in (6) _____Hyde Park. On the following day we left for (7) _____New York. The time on board wasn't boring as there were two films to watch on the monitor. The people on the plane were all (8) _____Italian. Before we landed at (9) _____JFK airport, we saw (10) _____Statue of Liberty, (11) _____Ellis Island and (12) _____Empire State Building. The hotel I stayed in was on the corner of (13) _____42nd Street and (14) _____5th Avenue. I don't like hotels very much, but I didn't have time to rent an apartment.

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 12: MỆNH ĐỀ QUAN HỆ (RELATIVE CLAUSES)

❖ Mệnh đề quan hệ:

Mệnh đề quan hệ là mệnh đề dùng để giải thích rõ hơn về danh từ đứng trước nó. Nó được nối bởi một đại từ quan hệ.

Ví dụ: The woman *who is talking to the teacher* is my mother.

Trong câu này phần được viết chữ nghiêng được gọi là một relative clause, nó đứng sau danh từ "the woman" và dùng để xác định danh từ đó. Mệnh đề quan hệ được sử dụng với một đại từ quan hệ.

1. Các đại từ quan hệ

Đại từ quan hệ	Cách sử dụng	Ví dụ
----------------	--------------	-------

Who	Làm chủ ngữ và thay thế cho 1 danh từ chỉ người	I told you about the woman who lives next door.
Whom	Làm tân ngữ và thay thế cho 1 danh từ chỉ người	I was invited by the professor whom I met at the conference.
Which	Làm chủ ngữ hoặc tân ngữ và thay thế cho 1 danh từ chỉ người hoặc vật.	Do you see the cat which is lying on the roof? She gave me a book which I like very much.
Whose	Chỉ sở hữu; whose được dùng với cả người và vật	Do you know the boy whose mother is a nurse?
That	Có thể dùng thay thế cho who/ whom/ which trong mệnh đề quan hệ xác định.	The boy that (who) is the most intelligent in this class is my brother. The doctor that (whom) you met at the hospital is very talented. I like the dress that (which) she is wearing.

Ø **Chú ý:**

Có 2 loại mệnh đề quan hệ là mệnh đề quan hệ hạn định và mệnh đề quan hệ không hạn định.

Mệnh đề quan hệ hạn định (Defining relative clause)	Mệnh đề quan hệ không hạn định (Non-defining relative clause)
Đây là mệnh đề cần thiết. Mệnh đề này là một bộ phận của câu. Thiếu nó câu sẽ không đầy đủ ý nghĩa. Ví dụ: - I told you about the woman who lives next door. - I was invited by the professor whom I met at the conference. - Do you see the cat which is lying on the roof? She gave me a book which I like very much. - Do you know the boy whose mother is a nurse? Lưu ý: Có thể dùng THAT trong mệnh đề quan hệ hạn định.	Đây là loại mệnh đề không cần thiết vì tiền ngữ đã được xác định, không có nó câu vẫn đủ nghĩa. Mệnh đề quan hệ không xác định được ngăn với mệnh đề chính bằng các dấu phẩy. Trước danh từ thường có: <i>this, that, these, those, my, his...</i> hoặc tên riêng. Ví dụ: - That man, whom you saw yesterday, is Mr Pike. - This is Mr Jones, who helped me last week. - Mary, whose sister I know, has won an Oscar. - Harry told me about his new job, which he's enjoying very much. Lưu ý: Không được dùng THAT trong mệnh đề quan hệ không hạn định (non-defining relative clause).

2. Relative adverb (Trạng từ quan hệ)

Trạng từ quan hệ có thể được sử dụng thay cho một đại từ quan hệ và giới từ. Cách nói này sẽ làm cho câu dễ hiểu hơn.

Ví dụ: This is the shop **in which** I bought my bike.

® This is the shop **where** I bought my bike.

Trạng từ quan hệ	Nghĩa	Cách sử dụng	Ví dụ
when	in/on which	Thay thế cho danh từ chỉ cụm thời gian	I remember the day <i>when</i> we met him
where	in/at which	Thay thế cho danh từ chỉ nơi chốn	I remember the place <i>where</i> we met him
why	for which	Thay thế cho danh từ chỉ lí do	I remember the reason <i>why</i> we met him

BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 12: MỆNH ĐỀ QUAN HỆ (RELATIVE CLAUSES)

Exercise 1: Choose the correct answers: relative pronouns.

1. The book _____ I bought at the bookstore yesterday is expensive.

A. who

B. whose

C. that

D. B and C are correct

2. What is the name of the blonde girl_____just came in?
A. who B. whose C. whom D. A and B are correct
3. I don't like people_____lose their tempers easily.
A. who B. whose C. that D. A and C are correct
4. Mexico City,_____has a population of over 10 million, is probably the fastest growing city in the world.
A. which B. whose C. that D. A and C are correct
5. This is Henry_____sister works for my father.
A. who B. whose C. that D. A and C are correct
6. The girl_____design had been chosen stepped to the platform to receive the award.
A. whose B. whom C. that D. which
7. Could you iron the trousers_____are hanging up behind the door?
A. who B. which C. that D. B and C are correct
8. Where is the girl_____sell tickets?
A. who B. whose C. whom D. A and C are correct
9. The man_____we consider our leader had much experience in climbing mountains.
A. who B. whose C. whom D. A and C are correct
10. The artist_____name I couldn't remember was one of the best I had ever seen.
A. who B. whose C. that D. A and C are correct

Exercise 2: Choose the correct answers: relative adverbs.

1. A café is a small restaurant_____people can get a light meal.
A. where B. which C. that D. All are correct
2. Alaska,_____my brother lives, is the largest state in the US.
A. which B. where C. who D. All are correct
3. This is the house_____we often stay in the summer.
A. where B. which C. that D. All are correct
4. Do you remember the clock tower_____I first met you?
A. where B. which C. that D. All are correct
5. Tell me the reason_____you were absent yesterday.
A. where B. when C. why D. that
6. There was a time_____dinosaurs dominated the earth.
A. which B. when C. that D. why
7. The house in_____I was born and grew up was destroyed in an earthquake ten years ago.
A. which B. where C. that D. All are correct
8. Summer is the time of the year_____the weather is the hottest.
A. that B. which C. when D. B and C are correct
9. The reason_____Jim has just lost his job is that he didn't work hard enough.
A. that B. which C. why D. B and C are correct
10. They hid me the money in a place_____it was safe from robbers.
A. which B. where C. that D. All are correct

Exercise 3: Complete the sentences with relative pronoun: who, whom, that, which.

1. Have you got the money_____I lent you yesterday?
2. Peter,_____I had seen earlier, wasn't at the party.
3. This is the machine_____cost half a million pounds.
4. Mary,_____had been listening to the conversation, looked angry.
5. Have you read the book_____I gave you?
6. The house,_____they bought three months ago, looks lovely.
7. Mrs. Jackson,_____had been very ill, died yesterday.
8. She is the woman_____sister looks after the baby for us.
9. The dog,_____had been very quiet, suddenly started barking.
10. I didn't receive the letters_____she sent me.

Exercise 4: Complete the sentences with relative pronoun or adverb.

1. Please tell me the reason_____I should let you go
2. Tell me the countries_____the traffic moves on the left-hand side.
3. We keep our bread in the fridge_____it doesn't go bad
4. I used to enjoy the summer_____we had a big family picnic.
5. Did you remember the day_____
6. Thank you very much for the present_____

I first met you?
you sent me.

7. This is Mrs. Jones, _____ son won the championship last year.
8. All of the people are looking at the man _____ son has been kidnapped.
9. The student with _____ she was dancing had a slight limb.
10. The man for _____ I was waiting didn't turn up.

Exercise 5: Complete the sentences with relative pronoun: who, whom, that, which.

1. Tom made a number of suggestions, most of _____ were very helpful.
2. Mart has three brothers, all of _____ are married.
3. We were given a lot of information, most of _____ was useless.
4. There were a lot of people at the party, only a few of _____ I had met before.
5. I sent her two letters, neither of _____ she has received.
6. I have two sisters, both of _____ are doctors.
7. He lent me many picture-books, most of _____ I had read.
8. The bus crashed into a queue of people. Four of _____ were killed.
9. He paid me \$5 for cleaning ten windows, most of _____ hadn't been cleaned for at least a year.
10. In prison they fed us on dry bread, most of _____ was moldy.

Exercise 6: Complete the sentences with relative adverb.

1. We visited the school _____ my father taught.
2. I met her last month, _____ she came to our house.
3. We all looked at the place _____ the fire had started.
4. Did they tell you the reason _____ they were late?
5. We must find a time _____ we can meet and a place _____ we can talk.
6. They arrived in the evening, at a time _____ we were all out.
7. I couldn't understand the reason _____ they were so rude.
8. I met him in the café _____ he was working as a waiter.
9. I listen to music late at night, _____ the children have gone to bed.
10. I bought them in August, _____ I was in France.

Exercise 7: Complete the sentences with preposition + relative pronoun.

1. The house _____ I was born is for sale.
2. It is the chair _____ he used to sit for meals.
3. In the middle of the village, there is a well _____ the villagers take water to drink.
4. I must thank the people _____ I got the present.
5. Do you know the doctor _____ I send?
6. The man _____ I was telling you is standing over there.
7. This is the man _____ I gave some money this morning.
8. Ms. Young, _____ many of her students are writing, is living happily and peacefully in Canada.
9. I like the teacher _____ I learnt English in high school.
10. I'm doing a group work. Mr. John _____ I was working is so generous and kind.

Exercise 8: Match each pair of sentences with suitable relative pronoun.

1. This is the man. I met him in Paris.
Ⓜ
2. I wanted the painting. You bought it.
Ⓜ
3. This is the chair. My parents gave it to me.
Ⓜ
4. She's the woman. She telephoned the police.
Ⓜ
5. He's the person. He wanted to buy your house.
Ⓜ
6. We threw out the computer. It never worked properly.
Ⓜ
7. This is the lion. It's been ill recently.
Ⓜ
8. The man was badly injured. He was driving the car.
Ⓜ
9. The children broke the window. They live in the next street.

®
10. That's the woman. I was telling you about her.

®

Exercise 9: Match each pair of sentences with suitable relative adverb.

1. Last week I went to see the house. I used to live in it.

®

2. He used to go to work late. That's why he was sacked.

®

3. I never forget the park. We met each other for the first time at this park.

®

4. The report was prepared yesterday. There was a heavy rain outside yesterday.

®

5. Her husband was abroad in September. She bought this house at that time.

®

6. This is my beloved school. I studied here when I was young.

®

7. They came home very late last night. Most of the family member had gone to sleep at that time.

®

8. I bought these pencils at the shop over there.

®

9. John was absent from class yesterday. She knew the reason for this but she didn't tell the teacher.

®

10. Everybody is off on Sunday. The children often go swimming on Sunday

®

Exercise 10: Match each pair of sentences with suitable relative adverb or relative pronoun.

1. These children are orphans. She is taking care of these children.

®

2. You were out three hours ago. You had a missed call at that time.

®

3. He never forgets the year 1982. His own company went bankrupt in 1982

®

4. My father goes swimming every day. You met him this morning.

®

5. There are a lot of fruit in summer. The weather is hot in summer.

®

6. The man is my father. I respect this man most.

®

7. I can have a good sleep on Saturday night. It is the best time of a week.

®

8. The man is my father. I respect his opinion most.

®

9. Mary and Margaret are twins. You met them yesterday.

®

10. The students will be awarded tomorrow. It is forecasted to have a rain tomorrow.

®

**CHUYÊN ĐỀ 13: V-ING VÀ V INFINITIVE
(GERUND AND INFINITIVE)**

v GERUND (V-ING) (DANH ĐỘNG TỪ)

1. Cách sử dụng

- Là chủ ngữ của câu: dancing bored him.
- Bổ ngữ của động từ: her hobby is painting.
- Là bổ ngữ: Seeing is believing.
- Sau giới từ: He was accused of smuggling.
- Sau một vài động từ: avoid, mind, enjoy,...

2. Một số cách dùng khác

ü V + V-ing

+ Những động từ sau được theo sau bởi V-ing:

admit, avoid, delay, enjoy, excuse, consider, deny, finish, imagine, forgive, keep, mind, miss, postpone,

practise, resist, risk, propose, detest, dread, resent, pardon, try, fancy, etc.

Ví dụ:

- He admitted taking the money. (Anh ta thừa nhận đã lấy tiền)
- Would you consider selling the property? (Bạn sẽ xem xét bán nhà chứ?)
- He kept complaining. (Anh ta vẫn tiếp tục phàn nàn)

ü **V + pre + V-ing**

V-ing được dùng sau một động từ dùng kèm với giới từ

apologize for, accuse of, insist on, feel like, congratulate on, suspect of, look forward to, dream of, succeed in, object to, approve/disapprove of, etc.

V-ing cũng dùng sau những cụm từ như:

Các cụm từ	Ý nghĩa
- It's no use / it's no good/ there's no point (in) + V-ing - It's (not) worth + V-ing - have difficult (in) + V-ing - It's a waste of time/ money + V-ing - spend/ waste time/money + V-ing - be/ get used to + V-ing = be/ get accustomed to + V-ing - do/ would you mind + V-ing? - be busy with + V-ing - what about + V-ing? how about + V-ing - go + V-ing (go shopping, go swimming...)	- vô ích khi làm gì - không xứng đáng - gặp khó khăn khi làm gì - lãng phí thời gian khi làm gì - sử dụng/ lãng phí tiền/ thời gian cho việc gì - quen với việc làm gì - bạn có phiền không nếu làm gì đó - bận rộn làm gì đó - làm việc này thì sao (dùng để đề xuất) - thực hiện việc gì đó với động từ go (đi mua sắm, đi bơi...)

v **INFINITIVE (ĐỘNG TỪ NGUYÊN THỂ)**

ü **Verb + to V**

Những động từ sau được theo sau trực tiếp bởi to-infinitive: *agree, appear, arrange, attempt, ask, decide, determine, fail, endeavour, happen, hope, learn, manage, offer, plan, prepare, promise, prove, refuse, seem, tend, threaten, try, volunteer, expect, want,...*

Ví dụ:

- She agreed to pay \$50. (Cô ấy đã đồng ý trả 50 đô la)
- Two men failed to return from the expedition. (Hai người đàn ông thất bại trở về từ cuộc thám hiểm)
- The remnants refused to leave. (Những tàn dư còn lại không được xóa bỏ)
- She volunteered to help the disabled. (Cô ấy tình nguyện giúp đỡ người tàn tật)

ü **Verb + how/ what/ when/ where/ which/ why + to V**

Những động từ sử dụng công thức này là: *ask, decide, discover, find out, forget, know, learn, remember, see, show, think, understand, want to know, wonder...*

Ví dụ:

- He discovered how to open the safe. (Anh ấy phát hiện ra làm thế nào để mở một cách an toàn)
- I found out where to buy fruit cheaply. (Tôi đã tìm ra nơi mua hoa quả rẻ)
- She couldn't think what to say. (Cô ấy không thể nghĩ ra điều gì để nói)
- I showed her which button to press. (Tôi chỉ cho cô ấy phải ấn nút nào)

ü **Verb + Object + to V**

Những động từ theo công thức này là: *advise, allow, enable, encourage, forbid, force, hear, instruct, invite, order, permit, persuade, request, remind, train, urge, want, tempt...*

Ví dụ:

- These glasses will enable you to see in the dark. (Cái kính này sẽ cho phép bạn nhìn trong bóng tối)
- She encouraged me to try again. (Cô ấy khuyến khích tôi thử lại lần nữa)
- They forbade her to leave the house. (Họ cấm cô ấy rời khỏi nhà)
- They persuaded us to go with them. (Họ đã thuyết phục chúng tôi đi với họ)

BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG

Exercise 1: Complete the sentences with V-ing or to V-inf.

1. I'm not in a hurry. I don't mind (wait)_____ for you.
2. I always try to avoid (borrow)_____ money from friends.
3. The traffic was very heavy this morning, but I managed (get)_____ to school on time.
4. Could you please stop (make)_____ so much noise?
5. Would you mind (keep)_____ silent? I am trying (study)_____.

6. They don't have much money. They can't afford (go)_____out very often.
7. My mother can't stand (stay)_____at home without doing anything.
8. You must promise (not/be)_____late again.
9. When I saw her in that funny hat, I couldn't help (laugh)_____.
10. They refused (lend)_____him the money although he needed it badly.

Exercise 2: Complete the sentences with V-ing or to V-inf.

1. I arranged (meet)_____them here.
2. He urged us (work)_____faster.
3. It is no use (wait) _____
4. He warned her_____ (not touch) the wire.
5. However, she did not plan (be)_____a secretary all her life.
6. She couldn't imagine (do)_____the same job for years and years.
7. My mother told me (not speak)_____to anyone about it.
8. He tried (explain)_____but she refused (listen)_____.
9. You are expected (know)_____the safety regulations of the college.
10. That was a very strange question (ask)_____.

Exercise 3: Complete the sentences with V-ing or to V-inf.

1. My father gave up (smoke)_____three years ago.
2. I have put off (write)_____the letter so many times. I really must do it today.
3. Sarah gave up (try)_____to find a job in this country and decided (go) _____abroad.
4. You can't stop me (do)_____what I want.
5. How long have you been able (swim)_____John?
6. Please, don't forget (post)_____the letter for me today! It is urgent.
7. The only thing that prevented her from (study)_____law was a lack of time and money.
8. She often remembered (talk)_____to her father before he became ill.
9. You must remember (buy)_____some sugar. We haven't got any now.
10. Don't forget (wake)_____me up before six o'clock tomorrow.

Exercise 4: Complete each sentence with one of these verbs, remember to put them in correct form.

1. He tried to avoid_____my question.
2. Could you please stop_____so much noise.
3. I enjoy_____to music.
4. I considered_____for the job but in the end I decided against it.
5. Have you finished_____your hair yet?
6. If you walk into the road without looking, you risk_____knocked down.
7. Jim is 65 but he isn't going to retire yet. He wants to carry on_____.
8. I don't mind you_____the phone as long as you pay for all your calls.
9. Hello! Fancy_____you here! What a surprise!
10. I have put off_____the letter so many times. I really must do it today.

Exercise 5: Underline the mistake in each sentence and correct it.

1. I couldn't make my car to start this morning.
®
2. I'm sure he isn't incapable of run a mile in four minutes.
®
3. Good friendship should be based on mutual understand.
®
4. I'm delighted hearing that you have made much progress in your study.
®
5. There is a lot of work doing here.
®
6. He was terribly excited to ask to play for Manchester.
®
7. He could not decide whether to get a job or studying.
®
8. I dislike being talk about everywhere.
®
9. He says that speak a foreign language always makes him nervous.
®
10. We're looking forward to see you again.

®

Exercise 6: Underline the mistake in each sentence.

1. I'd like buying some earrings like yours.
2. She smelt something burning and saw smoke rise.
3. I warned them not climb the mountain in such bad weather.
4. They voluntarily spent their vacations to teach illiterate people to read and write.
5. You can congratulate yourself about having done an excellent job.
6. Peter apologized for break the vase.
7. He insisted on seeing the manager tomorrow.
8. Some high school students take part in help the handicapped.
9. Shy people find it difficult taking part in group discussion.
10. I am unable come to the meeting on Monday evening, please apologize for my absence.

Exercise 7: Rewrite the sentence in reported speech form.

1. "Don't believe everything you hear" he said to me (advise)
®
2. "Lend me your pen for a moment" I said to Mary (ask)
®
3. "Would you like to have lunch with me on Sunday?" Danny said to Sarah (invite)
®
4. "Will you help me, please?" she said to me (ask)
®
5. "You had better apologize for being late" my mother said to me (advise)
®
6. "We will come back again" they said (promise)
®
7. "You should join the football team, Eric" said the teacher (encourage)
®
8. "I'll give it to him tomorrow" John said (promise)
®
9. "I'd like Lan to become a doctor" my mum said (want)
®
10. "Remember to lock the door before going to school" my sister said to me (remind)
®

Exercise 8: Rewrite the sentence in reported speech form.

1. "You should go home and take a rest" the boss said (advise)
®
2. "Come and see me when you want" he said to us (invite)
®
3. "Please don't smoke in my room" she said to them (ask)
®
4. "Let's have a party this weekend" he said (suggest)
®
5. "I am sorry, I didn't phone you earlier" Mary said to me (apologize)
®
6. "It is nice of you to help me, thank you Mike" Bob said (thank)
®
7. "Yes, okay. I'll lend you my car" Peter said to Ann (agree)
®
8. "You told a lie, Tom" she said (accuse)
®
9. "I won't help you with your homework" Jane said to me (refuse)
®
10. "You wear a suit when you come to my party" Susan said to me (insist)
®

Exercise 9: Choose the correct answers.

1. _____ it several times, he didn't want to read it once again.
A. Reading B. To read C. To have read D. Having read
2. _____ that he was poor, I offered to pay his fare.

- A. Knowing B. Known C. Knew D. Having knew
3. I hate _____ a child _____
A. see/ crying B. see/cry C. seeing/ to cry D. seeing/ cry
4. The old man accused the boys _____ 2 glasses of his.
A. break B. of breaking C. to break D. breaking
5. He insisted _____ me to the zoo next Sunday
A. on take B. to take C. taking D. on taking
6. She offered _____ the flowers every morning if I like.
A. watering B. to water C. being watered D. having watered
7. The police accused him of _____ fire to the building but he denied _____ in the area on the night of the fire.
A. setting/ being B. setting/ having been
C. set/ be D. having set/ having been
8. Someone told us _____ sit on the stairs.
A. don't B. not C. not to D. to not
9. The mother accused her son _____ what he said.
A. of not do B. of not to do
C. of not doing D. of not to doing
10. The doctor advised him _____ and to take up some sport.
A. stop smoke B. stop smoking C. to stop smoking D. to stop to smoke

Exercise 10: Choose the correct answers.

1. Professional people expect _____ when it is necessary to cancel an appointment.
A. you to call them B. that you would call them
C. you calling them D. that you are calling them
2. Jack admitted _____ the money
A. steal B. to steal C. stealing D. stolen
3. Don't _____ him to arrive early. He's always late.
A. think B. judge C. hope D. expect
4. I wouldn't _____ of going to the party I hadn't been invited to.
A. dream B. intend C. depend D. rely
5. The instructor warned the students _____ sailing alone on the lake.
A. on B. for C. of D. against
6. Her mother prevented her _____ going out tonight.
A. against B. from C. about D. at
7. I apologized _____ the book at home.
A. for leaving B. to leaving C. leaving D. to leave
8. Mary thanked me _____ her last night.
A. for helping B. to help C. for help D. for my help
9. John insisted on driving me to the airport.
A. to drive B. driving C. on driving D. of driving
10. I warned Jack against playing with matches.
A. against player B. against to play C. against play D. against playing

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 14: CÁC ĐỘNG TỪ KHUYẾT THIỂU (MODAL VERBS)

v Đặc tính chung của động từ khuyết thiếu (modal verbs)

1. Động từ khuyết thiếu được theo sau bởi một động từ nguyên thể bare infinitive. S

+ Modal Verbs + V(bare-infinitive)

Ví dụ: They can speak French and English.

2. Không biến đổi dạng thứ trong các ngôi.

Ví dụ: He can use our phone. (He use your phone).

I. CAN - COULD

A. Can

Can chỉ có 2 thì: Hiện tại và Quá khứ đơn. Những hình thức khác ta dùng động từ tương đương "be able to".

Can cũng có thể được dùng như một trợ động từ để hình thành một số cách nói riêng.

1. **Can** và **could** có nghĩa là "có thể", diễn tả một khả năng (ability).

Ví dụ: Can you swim?

She could ride a bicycle when she was five years old.

2. *Can* cũng diễn tả một điều có thể xảy đến (possibility). Trong câu hỏi và câu cảm thán *can* có nghĩa là “Is it possible...?”

Ví dụ: Can it be true?

It surely can't be four o'clock already!

3. *Can not* được dùng để diễn tả một điều không thể xảy ra.

Ví dụ: He can't go to the zoo because of the rain.

B. Could

1. *Could* là thì quá khứ đơn của *can*.

Ví dụ: She could swim when she was five.

2. *Could* còn được dùng trong câu điều kiện.

Ví dụ: If you tried, you could do that work.

3. Trong cách nói thân mật, *Could* được xem như nhiều tính chất lịch sự hơn *CAN*.

Ví dụ: Can you change a 20-dollar note for me, please?

Could you tell me the right time, please?

4. *Could* được dùng để diễn tả một sự ngờ vực hay một lời phản kháng nhẹ nhàng.

Ví dụ: His story could be true, but I hardly think it is.

I could do the job today, but I'd rather put it off until tomorrow.

II. MAY - MIGHT

1. *May* và dạng quá khứ *Might* diễn tả sự xin phép, cho phép (permission).

Ví dụ: May I take this book? - Yes, you may.

She asked if she might go to the party.

2. *May/Might* dùng để diễn tả một khả năng có thể xảy ra hay không thể xảy ra.

Ví dụ: It may rain.

He admitted that the news might be true.

III. MUST

1. **Must** có nghĩa là “phải” diễn tả một mệnh lệnh hay một sự bắt buộc.

Ví dụ: You must drive on the left in London.

2. **Must** dùng trong câu suy luận logic.

Ví dụ: Are you going home at midnight? You must be mad!

You have worked hard all day; You must be tired.

3. *Must Not (Mustn't)* diễn tả một lệnh cấm.

Ví dụ: You mustn't walk on the grass.

Ø Chú ý:

- *Have to* dùng thay cho *must* trong những hình thức mà *must* không dùng được.

Ví dụ: We will have to hurry if we are going to catch the twelve o'clock train.

- *Have to* không thể thay thế *must* trong câu suy luận logic.

Ví dụ: He must be mad.

- **Must** và **have to** đều có thể dùng để diễn tả sự cưỡng bách, bắt buộc (compulsion). Tuy nhiên *must* thể hiện sự bắt buộc đến từ người nói trong khi *have to* diễn tả sự bắt buộc đến từ phía bên ngoài (ví dụ các quy định pháp luật).

Ví dụ: You must do what I tell you. (Bạn phải làm điều mà tôi bảo bạn.) Passengers

must cross the line by the bridge. (Lệnh của Cục Đường Sắt)

Passengers have to cross the line by the bridge. (Vì không còn đường nào khác)

IV. SHALL - SHOULD

A. Shall

Được dùng trong những trường hợp sau:

- Dùng trong câu trúc thì Tương lai (Simple Future) ở ngôi thứ nhất.

Ví dụ: I shall do what I like.

- Diễn tả một lời hứa (promise), một sự quả quyết (determination) hay một mối đe dọa (threat).

Ví dụ: If you work hard, you shall have a holiday on Saturday. (promise) He

shall suffer for this; he shall pay you what he owes you. (threat)

These people want to buy my house, but they shan't have it. (determination)

B. Should

Được dùng để khuyên ai đó nên làm điều gì.

Ví dụ: You should do what the teacher tells you.

- Dùng thay cho **ought to, had better**.

V. Will-Would

1. Will

- Được dùng ở thì Tương lai (simple future), diễn tả một kế hoạch (plan), sự mong muốn (willingness), một lời hứa (promise) hay một sự quả quyết (determination).

- OK! I will pay you at the rate you ask. (willingness)

- I won't forget little Margaret's birthday. I will send her a present. (promise)

2. Would

- Dùng để hình thành thì Tương lai trong quá khứ (future in the past) hay các thì trong câu điều kiện.

Ví dụ: He said he would send it to me, but he didn't.

If she were here, she would help US.

He would have been very happy if he had known about it.

- Diễn tả một thói quen trong quá khứ. Với nghĩa này, *Would* có thể dùng thay cho **used to**. **Ví**

dụ: Every day he would get up at six o'clock and light the fire.

VI. Ought to

Ought to có nghĩa là “nên”, gần giống với should. Trong hầu hết các trường hợp *ought to* có thể được thay thế bằng should.

Ví dụ: They ought to (should) pay the money.

He ought to (should) be ashamed of himself.

VII. Used to

- *Used to* diễn tả một thói quen thường xuyên xảy ra trong quá khứ.

Ví dụ: He used to go fishing when he was small.

Chú ý dạng phủ định và nghi vấn:

Khẳng định	S + used + to V
Phủ định	S + didn't + v
Nghi vấn	Did + S + V?

Phân biệt USED TO và một số hình thức khác

- Used to + infinitive: hành động liên tục trong quá khứ

- (Be) Used to + V-ing: quen với một việc gì

- (Get) Used to + V-ing: làm quen với một việc gì.

Ví dụ: He used to work six days a week. (Now he doesn't)

It took my brother two weeks to get used to working at night. Now he's used to it.

BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG

Exercise 1: Complete each sentence with can/ could/ be able to (not).

- _____ you swim when you were 10?
- We _____ get to the meeting on time yesterday because the train was delayed by one hour.
- He _____ arrive at the party on time, even after missing the train, so he was very pleased.
- He's amazing, he _____ speak 5 languages including Chinese.
- I _____ drive a car until I was 34, then I moved to the countryside so I had to learn.
- I looked everywhere for my glasses but I _____ find them anywhere.
- I searched for your house for ages, luckily I _____ find it in the end.
- She's 7 years old but she _____ read yet - her parents are getting her extra lessons.
- I read the book three times but I _____ understand it.
- James _____ speak Japanese when he lived in Japan, but he's forgotten most of it now.

Exercise 2: Complete each sentence with can/ could/ be able to (not).

- I _____ understand the chapter we had to read for homework. It was so difficult.
- I _____ lift this box - it's too heavy! Would you help me?
- Lucy _____ make it to our meeting after all. She's stuck in traffic at the moment.
- John _____ play tennis really well. He's champion of his club.
- Unfortunately, I really _____ sing at all! No-one in my family is musical either.
- When the car broke down I was really pleased because I _____ solve the problem.
- Julian _____ play excellent golf when he was only ten.
- My grandmother _____ use a computer until last month. Since then, she's been taking lessons at the library.
- I _____ open this window. I think it's stuck!
- Julia _____ play the piano. She's never studied it.

Exercise 3: Complete each sentence with might/ must/ should (not).

- Nancy said you didn't need to buy her anything for her birthday, but I really think you _____ at least get her some flowers or a nice bottle of wine.

2. Debbie said she was really busy this week, but I think she _____ show up at the party if she doesn't have to work overtime on Friday.
3. Nina said she would come over right after work, so she _____ be here by 6:00.
4. Oh my God, he's unconscious. Don't move him – he _____ have internal injuries.
5. Dan: Where's the remote control? I want to change the channel.
Fiona: I don't know. It _____ be under the couch.
6. Experts agree that to master a foreign language, you _____ practice the language regularly.
7. New research suggests that exercise can reduce the chance of heart disease as well as cancer. That's why I told my father that he _____ start walking once a day.
8. We _____ invite Sally and her husband to come to the picnic on Saturday. We haven't seen them in weeks.
9. We had better call Tony to see if he's at home before we go over to his house. He _____ be there and we don't want to drive all the way over there for nothing.
10. At first, my boss didn't want to hire Sam. But I told my boss that he _____ take another look at his resume and reconsider him for the position.
11. You _____ worry so much. If you don't get this job, just apply for another one.
12. I would love to go on the cruise with Michelle. But such a luxurious trip _____ cost a fortune. I doubt I could afford something like that.
13. As some people _____ be allergic to chemicals in artificial plant foods, gardeners _____ use an organic brand to avoid skin irritations.
14. I know Eve wants to go to the ballet with us, but we _____ call her before we get her ticket as she might be busy that night.
15. It _____ be a bad idea to take some snacks along while we're hiking. Last time, we got so hungry we had to come back early without finishing the hike.

Exercise 4: Complete each sentence with *must/ or have to (not)*.

1. You _____ be kidding! That can't be true.
2. I _____ be at the meeting by 10:00. I will probably _____ take a taxi if I want to be on time.
3. You _____ forget to pay the rent tomorrow. The landlord is very strict about paying on time.
4. You _____ be so rude! Why don't you try saying "please" once in a while.
5. If you are over 18 in California, you _____ take a driver training course to get a driver's license. You can have a friend or a family member teach you instead.
6. You _____ be rich to be a success. Some of the most successful people I know haven't got a penny to their name.
7. Ed: My car broke down in Death Valley last week. I _____ have it towed more than a hundred miles to the nearest mechanic.
8. While hiking in Alaska, you _____ keep an eye out for bears. If you see one, you _____ approach it. They are beautiful animals; however, they are wild and unpredictable in nature.
9. I _____ go to work tomorrow because it is Memorial Day. The best thing about a day off from work is that I _____ get up at 6:00.
10. Yesterday, I _____ cram all day for my French final. I didn't get to sleep until after midnight.
11. Emily: Oh no! I completely forgot we were supposed to pick Jenny up at the airport.
Barbara: She _____ still be sitting there waiting for us.
12. Ingrid received a scholarship which will cover 100% of the tuition. She _____ worry at all about the increasing cost of education.
13. When I was a child my grandmother was continually correcting our manners. She always used to say, "One _____ eat with one's mouth open."
14. I've redone this math problem at least twenty times, but my answer is wrong according to the answer key. The answer in the book _____ wrong!
15. You _____ submit the application if it has not been completely filled out. If the form is not accurate and complete, you will be rejected and you will _____ reapply at a later date.

Exercise 5: Complete each sentence with *could/might (not)*.

1. Unfortunately, James and Michelle had already made plans, so they _____ exhibition.
2. You _____ do the job if you didn't speak Arabic fluently.
come with us to the
3. In order to win the pie eating contest, he would have to eat sixteen pies in ten minutes. He _____ possibly eat that many pies - he would explode!
4. Susan _____ hear the speaker because the crowd was cheering so loudly.

5. It _____ be a bad idea to take some snacks along while we're hiking.
6. They have had several major snow storms in the mountains during the last month. The road to Smithsville _____ be passable.
7. Jerry _____ be angry at me. I've never done anything to upset him.
8. The lamp _____ be broken. Maybe the light bulb just burned out.
9. When you were a child, you _____ swim from here to the little island in the middle of the river, couldn't you?
10. She _____ possibly be the winner of the talent show! The other acts were much better than hers.
11. Ted's flight from Amsterdam took more than 11 hours. He must be exhausted after such a long flight. He _____ prefer to stay in tonight and get some rest.
12. I heard that band is really popular, and tickets sell out quickly. You _____ get tickets if you wait too long.
13. Please make sure to water my plants while I am gone. If they don't get enough water, they _____ die.
14. It _____ be a bad idea to get a car alarm for your new sports car. New cars tend to attract thieves.
15. That _____ possibly be Mr. Jones. He's lost so much weight that he looks like a completely different person.

Exercise 6: Complete each sentence with *can/ could/have to/must/might/ should (not)*.

1. That concert has been sold out for weeks. You _____ get tickets even if you knew the band personally. It's impossible!
2. If you want to get a better feeling for how the city is laid out, you _____ explore the waterfront.
walk downtown and
3. Hiking the trail to the peak _____ be dangerous if you are not well prepared for dramatic weather changes. You _____ research the route a little more before you attempt the ascent.
4. When you have a small child in the house, you _____ leave small objects lying around. Such objects might be swallowed, causing serious injury or even death.
5. Dave: _____ you hold your breath for more than a minute?
Nathan: No, I can't.
6. Frank and Sarah get tickets to the concert. The concert was sold out a little over an hour after tickets went on sale.
7. Danny: _____ I borrow your lighter for a minute?
Stephen: Sure, no problem. Actually, you _____ keep it if you want to. I've given up smoking.
8. I _____ speak Arabic fluently when I was a child and we lived in Egypt.
9. Leo: Where is the spatula? It _____ be in this drawer but it's not here.
Nancy: I just did a load of dishes last night and they're still in the dish washer. It _____ be in there. That's the only other place it _____ be.
10. You _____ take your umbrella along with you today. The weatherman on the news said there's a storm north of here and it might rain later on this afternoon.

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 15: CÂU HỎI ĐUÔI (TAG QUESTION)

Trong câu hỏi đuôi, người đặt câu hỏi đưa ra một mệnh đề (mệnh đề chính) nhưng không hoàn toàn chắc chắn về tính đúng / sai của mệnh đề đó, do vậy họ dùng câu hỏi dạng này để kiểm chứng về mệnh đề đưa ra.

Ví dụ:

He should stay in bed, ***shouldn't he?***

She has been studying English for two years, ***hasn't she?***

There are only twenty-eight days in February, ***aren't there?***

It's raining now, ***isn't it?*** (Trời vẫn còn mưa, phải không?) You and I talked with the professor yesterday, ***didn't we?***

You won't be leaving for now, ***will you?***

Jill and Joe haven't been to America, ***have they?***

Câu hỏi đuôi chia làm hai thành phần tách biệt nhau bởi dấu phẩy theo quy tắc sau:

- Sử dụng trợ động từ giống như ở mệnh đề chính để làm phần đuôi câu hỏi. Nếu không có trợ động từ thì dùng do, does, did để thay thế.
- Nếu mệnh đề chính ở thể khẳng định thì phần đuôi ở thể phủ định và ngược lại.
- Thời của động từ ở đuôi phải theo thời của động từ ở mệnh đề chính.
- Chủ ngữ của mệnh đề chính và của phần đuôi là giống nhau. Đại từ ở phần đuôi luôn phải để ở dạng chủ ngữ (in subject form)

- Phần đuôi nếu ở dạng phủ định thì thường được rút gọn (n't). Nếu không rút gọn thì phải theo thứ tự: auxiliary + subject + not? (He saw it yesterday, did he not?)
- Động từ *have* có thể là động từ chính, cũng có thể là trợ động từ. Khi nó là động từ chính của mệnh đề trong tiếng Anh Mỹ thì phần đuôi phải dùng trợ động từ *do*, *does* hoặc *did*.
- *There is*, *there are* và *it is* là các chủ ngữ giả nên phần đuôi được phép dùng lại *there* hoặc *it*

BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG

Exercise 1: Choose the correct answers.

- No one is better cook than his mother, _____?
A. is she B. isn't she C. are they D. aren't they
- Do it right now, _____?
A. will you B. shall you C. do you D. don't you
- There are no easy ways ; to learn a foreign language, _____?
A. are they B. are there C. aren't they D. aren't there
- Fie seldom goes to the library, _____?
A. doesn't he B. is he C. does he D. isn't he
- Let's go for a long walk, _____?
A. will we B. shall we C. don't you D. do you
- I think he will join us, _____?
A. doesn't he B. won't he C. will he D. don't I
- The film is good, _____?
A. is it B. are they C. isn't it D. aren't they
- You are going to the party, _____?
A. is you B. are you C. aren't you D. were you
- He can speak English, _____?
A. can he B. can't he C. can't him D. could he
- You don't know him, _____?
A. do you B. don't you C. are you D. aren't you

Exercise 2: Choose the correct answers

- Lan speaks Chinese very well, _____?
A. does she B. doesn't she C. is she D. was she
- John has worked hard, _____?
A. does he B. did he C. has he D. hasn't he
- They invited him to the party, _____?
A. do they B. don't they C. did they D. didn't they
- They are leaving here tomorrow, _____?
A. do they B. are they C. aren't they D. did they
- I am a bit late, _____?
A. am not I B. aren't you C. are you D. aren't I
- No one is different to praise, _____?
A. is one B. isn't one C. is he D. are they
- Somebody has left these socks on the bathroom floor, _____?
A. have they B. haven't they C. has he D. hasn't he
- James owns a restaurant, _____?
A. does he B. is he C. doesn't he D. didn't he
- You aren't too busy to talk, _____?
A. are you B. have you C. aren't D. do you
- The ticket to London doesn't cost a lot, _____?
A. do they B. does it C. is it D. isn't it

Exercise 3: Complete the sentences with tag questions.

- Thu's father reads a morning newspaper everyday, _____?
- The teacher is going to explain a new grammar lesson, _____?
- Their classmates were so excited about the games yesterday, _____?
- Lan enjoys sewing clothes for her doll, _____?
- Hoa did a lot of homework last night, _____?

6. Schools may be closed if it snows heavily, _____?
7. She has visited the citadel in Hue twice, _____?
8. People have to rebuild the building after fire, _____?
9. Their children enjoy playing computer games, _____?
10. You will have a cable TV soon, _____?

Exercise 4: Complete the sentences with tag questions.

1. I am making a big mistake, _____?
2. Let's go shopping at Saigon Coop Mart, _____?
3. Children should drink a lot of milk and fruit juice, _____?
4. Bring your camera with you to the party, _____?
5. These shoes need to be fixed, _____?
6. You must ask for your parents' permission to join the trip, _____?
7. Ba likes healthy food, _____?
8. Thu didn't take part in the competition, _____?
9. Phong hasn't been to Hanoi before, _____?
10. She can ride to school by herself, _____?

Exercise 5: Complete the sentences with tag questions.

1. We should follow the traffic rules strictly, _____?
2. He seldom visits you, _____?
3. You have never been in Italy, _____?
4. No one died in the accident, _____?
5. Nothing is wrong, _____?
6. Nobody called the phone, _____?
7. Everything is okay, _____?
8. Everyone took a rest, _____?
9. Going swimming in the summer is never boring, _____?
10. Let's dance together, _____?

Exercise 6: Complete the sentences with tag questions.

1. Don't talk in class, _____?
2. Sit down, _____?
3. Hoa never comes to school late, _____?
4. He hardly ever makes a mistake, _____?
5. We must communicate with you by means of email or chatting, _____?
6. She has got a great sense of humor, _____?
7. Neither of them offered to help you, _____?
8. He ought to have made a note of it, _____?
9. There will be plenty for everyone, _____?
10. Let's go out for dinner tonight, _____?

Exercise 7: Complete the sentences with tag questions.

1. We often watch TV in the afternoon, _____?
2. John and Max don't like Maths, _____?
3. He could have bought a new car, _____?
4. The Mount Rushmore National Memorial Park is in Keystone, _____?
5. She must come to the party, _____?
6. Kathy and YoYo will go to the swimming pool tomorrow, _____?
7. No one can help you, _____?
8. You have never been to Peking, _____?
9. Let's have a drink, _____?
10. He could have bought a new car, _____?

Exercise 8: Complete the sentences with tag questions.

1. Come and see me tomorrow, _____?
2. I'm never called "Scholar", _____?
3. Everybody can learn how to swim, _____?
4. His family often has tea for breakfast, _____?
5. That job is hardly suitable for her, _____?
6. No one died in the accident, _____?

7. Speaking of kids, you have some of your own, _____?
8. That depends on what you mean by a long time, _____?
9. Everyone took the rest, _____?
10. Let's go to the cinema tonight, _____?

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 16: TÍNH TỪ VÀ TRẠNG TỪ (ADJECTIVE AND ADVERB)

1. Tính từ:

- **Đứng trước danh từ: adj + N** She is a good student.

- **Sau động từ to be** He is tall.

- **Sau các động từ liên kết như: become, get, feel, look, seem, taste, smell, sound,...** Ví

dụ: The coffee smells good.

he looks sad.

- **Sau các đại từ bất định: something, anything, everything, nothing, somebody, someone, anybody, anything,...**

Ví dụ: Is there anything new?

2. Trạng từ:

- **Đứng sau động từ thường**

Ví dụ: She drives carefully.

- **be + adv + V3/-ed**

The house was completely destroyed.

☐ **Note:** Trạng từ *well* đứng sau động từ "to be" để chỉ sức khỏe

Ví dụ: I'm not very well.

- **Cách thành lập trạng từ:** thêm -ly vào sau tính từ

+ careful ☐ carefully

+ careless ☐ carelessly

+ happy ☐ happily

+ sad ☐ sadly

+ slow ☐ slowly

- Một số từ vừa là tính từ, vừa là trạng từ: **fast, hard, early, late** Ví

dụ: He drives very fast.

She works hard.

3. Tính từ + Mệnh đề

Một số tính từ chỉ cảm giác như: *glad, happy, pleased, delighted, excited, sorry, disappointed, amazed*, có thể có một mệnh đề theo sau

Ví dụ: We are glad that everyone came back home safely. (Chúng tôi vui mừng rằng mọi người về nhà an toàn.)

BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG

Exercise 1: Underline the adverb in each sentence.

1. They worked fast to cover the distance before the breakfast hour.
2. He wanted to go there immediately.
3. He walked farther than I did.
4. They got up very early.
5. Are you quite sure of this?
6. I didn't know it so well as him.
7. Today I feel somewhat better.
8. He does his work quite differently from his brother.
9. I wish he could write more plainly, so that I could read his letters easily.
10. They usually begin to work at 6 o'clock in the morning.

Exercise 2: Find a place in each sentence to put the adverb in bracket.

1. He has read that book, (already).

☐

2. This book is interesting (extremely).

☐

3. I haven't been there (before).

☐

4. He is on time (seldom).

☐

5. He has a bad pain in his chest today (very).
☐
6. The elevator operates (automatically).
☐
7. He arrives at the meeting on time (never).
☐
8. They stayed there all day quietly, (quietly).
☐
9. I will be there by 2 o'clock (certainly).
☐
10. He left the office this afternoon (early).
☐

Exercise 3: Circle the correct answers.

1. They dance the Tango **beautiful/ beautifully**
2. She planned their trip to Greece very **careful/ carefully**
3. Jim painted the kitchen very **bad/ badly**
4. She speaks very **quiet/ quietly**
5. Turn the stereo down, it's too **loud/ loudly**
6. He skipped **happy/ happily** down the road to school.
7. He drives too **fast/ well**
8. She knows the road **good/ well**
9. He plays the guitar **terrible/ terribly**
10. We're going camping tomorrow so we have to get up **early/ soon**.

Exercise 4: Circle the correct answers.

1. She straightened up and looked out the window **direct/ directly** at him.
2. All goes **good/ well**, and after some time he feels relaxed enough to go for a walk.
3. Your trigger **happy/ happily** friend isn't in the house.
4. The gulf between the 'rich' and the 'poor' has narrowed, to the point that the word 'poor' is **hard/ hardly** applicable.
5. **Interesting/ Interestingly**, the changes the adapter has made seem designed to make the story even more frightening.
6. He joined dozens of others that sailed **lazy/ lazily** toward the surface.
7. He swore so **loud/ loudly** at the top of his voice, that she didn't get any sleep all the next night.
8. Frankly, it is very **clever/ cleverly** done.
9. Such **nice/ nicely** balances of economic integration are hard to sustain for more than a single generation.
10. There are already rumours that publishers are feeling **nervous/ nervously**.

Exercise 5: Complete each sentence with one of the adverbs available.

perfectly	suddenly	late	Quietly	carefully
hard	heavily	dangerously	Slowly	early

1. The train stopped _____
2. I opened the door _____
3. Please listen _____
4. I understand you _____
5. It's raining _____
6. Sue speaks very _____
7. The bus was _____
8. I went to bed _____
9. He was driving _____
10. Jane's studying _____ for her examinations.

Exercise 6: Complete each sentence with one of the adjectives available.

fast	bad	bad	Anxious	slow
hot	quiet	nice	Careful	intelligent

1. Sue is very _____
2. Be _____
3. It was a _____ game.
4. Ben is a _____ runner.
5. Why are you always so _____?

6. Those oranges look very _____
7. I'm so disappointed. My exam results were so _____
8. She seemed _____ about her coming interview. She couldn't sleep last night.
9. He wants his coffee _____
10. I consider him _____ as he can answer all the questions without thinking.

Exercise 7: Decide if each adverb is true or false and correct the false ones.

- a. Maria learns languages (1) **incredibly** (2) **quick**.
- b. The meeting was very (3) **badly** organized.
- c. She appeared (4) **sleepily**.
- d. He wants the property (5) **badly**.
- e. Bill gets (6) **angrily** (7) **easy**.
- f. I consider the case (8) **carefully**.
- g. I found this case (9) **unusually**.
- h. I found the money (10) **quickly**.
- i. The examination was (11) **surprising** easy.
- j. We became (12) **thirstily**.

Exercise 8: Decide if each adverb is true or false and correct the false ones.

1. I was (1) **bitter** (2) **disappointed** about my job.
2. The driver of the car was (3) **badly** injured in the accident.
3. It's a (4) **reasonable** (5) **cheap** restaurant and the food is extremely (6) **well**.
4. I felt the surface of the table (7) **carefully**; It felt (8) **smoothly**.
5. Would you please have those things (9) **readily** for us?
6. Have the members suggested anything (10) **different** (11) **recently**.
7. The party was very (12) **well**.
8. I didn't sleep (13) **well** last night.
9. He doesn't explain things (14) **clear**.
10. I didn't go out because of the (15) **heavily** rain.

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 17: CÁC TỪ NỐI (CONNECTIVES)

Các từ nối phổ biến nhất trong tiếng anh là: **and**, **but**, **or** (hoặc/ hay; “**or else**” nếu không), **so** (do đó, vì thế), **therefore** (do đó), **however** (tuy nhiên). Các từ nối này được dùng để nối hai từ, hai cụm từ hay hai mệnh đề cùng loại, chức năng hay cấu trúc.

1. And: dùng để bổ sung thông tin (additional information).

Ví dụ: This appliance is modern **and** economical. (Thiết bị này hiện đại và tiết kiệm.)

His father is a doctor **and** he works in a hospital. (Cha anh ấy là bác sĩ và ông ấy làm việc trong một bệnh viện.)

2. Or: diễn tả sự chọn lựa.

Ví dụ: Do you study Maths or Chemistry? (Bạn học toán hay vật lý?)

Does he live in the city centre or in the suburbs? (Anh ấy sống ở trung tâm thành phố hay ở ngoại ô?)

Or else (nếu không): diễn tả một điều kiện.

Ví dụ: You must hurry or (else) you'll be late for the bus? (Bạn phải nhanh lên nếu không bạn sẽ lỡ xe bus.)

3. But: nối hai ý tương phản nhau

Ví dụ: He's fat but his brother isn't. (Anh ấy mập nhưng bạn của anh ấy thì không.) That man is famous but humble. (Người đàn ông đó nổi tiếng nhưng khiêm tốn.)

Ø **Chú ý:** **However** (tuy nhiên): diễn tả sự tương phản. Nó đồng nghĩa với **but** nhưng luôn luôn nối liền hai mệnh đề.

Ví dụ: He's over seventy; however, he's still active. (Ông ấy trên 70, tuy nhiên ông ấy vẫn năng động.) It's raining hard; the game is, however, going on. (Trời đang mưa to; tuy nhiên trận đấu vẫn tiếp tục.)

4. So (vì thế, do đó): diễn tả hậu quả.

Ví dụ: He's busy, so he can't help you. (Anh ấy bận, do vậy anh ấy không thể giúp bạn.) The test was easy, so most of the pupils could do it.

Ø **Chú ý:** **Therefore** (do đó, vì thế): đồng nghĩa với **so**. Nó dùng để chỉ hậu quả của một hành động.

Ví dụ: He's at the meeting now; therefore he can't answer your phone.

BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG

Exercise 1: Complete the sentences with **and/ but/ or/so.**

1. I would like to come, _____ I do not have time.
2. I invited him _____ his friends.

3. The door was open, _____ we could hear everything.
4. We must hurry, _____ we will be late.
5. She is kind. _____, she is rather forgetful.
6. The work was new to me. _____, it did not seem difficult.
7. We looked everywhere. _____, we could not find the keys.
8. He is old. _____, his mind is still active.
9. It was very hot. _____, we decided to go swimming.
10. It was very hot, _____ we decided to go swimming.

Exercise 2: Complete the sentences with *and/ but/ or/ so*.

1. I have invited him _____ his sister.
2. He walked up to the door _____ knocked.
3. I would rather travel by train, _____ the bus leaves earlier.
4. We were born in this village; _____, we know everyone here.
5. The sun was warm, _____ a cool breeze blew in from the sea.
6. I have read this book before; _____, I do not remember the plot.
7. They were hot _____ tired.
8. The door was locked, _____ we had to wait inside.
9. I have known her for many years _____ I understand her character well.
10. They visited many stores; _____, they could not find what they were looking for.

Exercise 3: Complete the sentences with *and/ but/ or/ so*.

1. I haven't really studied for this exam, _____ I feel a little nervous.
2. I told him not to come, _____ he came anyway.
3. He has always done well on exams, _____ this time he failed.
4. In the living room there is a TV _____ a recorder.
5. I live in a flat at the top floor; I don't have a garden, _____ I have a balcony.
6. She likes Japanese food _____ her grandson doesn't like it at all.
7. My mother is severe _____ my father is nice.
8. New York is very exciting _____ too expensive.
9. We both like sailing _____ we live near the sea.
10. There is a bed, a wardrobe _____ an armchair in my bedroom.

Exercise 4: Rewrite the sentences using *and/but/or/so*.

1. The train proceeded quickly. The train proceeded smoothly.
Ⓡ
2. They may leave today. They also may leave tomorrow.
Ⓡ
3. The child hates getting up in the morning. He also dislikes going to bed at night.
Ⓡ
4. He is talented. He also has a charm.
Ⓡ
5. The street is lined with oak trees. It is also lined with elm trees.
Ⓡ
6. The lecture was long. In addition, it was also a boring lecture.
Ⓡ
7. You should choose: One, eat less; two, do more exercises.
Ⓡ
8. I am proud to be here. I am also happy to meet you here.
Ⓡ
9. The town is historical. It is picturesque too.
Ⓡ
10. We know him. We don't know his friends.
Ⓡ

Exercise 5: Correct the incorrect part in each sentence.

1. We walked out of the door, down the steps and went across the street.
Ⓡ
2. She loves singing, dancing, and to play the piano.
Ⓡ

3. The wind moaned, shrieked and was howling.
®
4. The music was fast, brilliant and sounded exciting.
®
5. He proposes to borrow money, open a store and going into business.
®
6. The town boasts four libraries, two theaters and there are many schools.
®
7. The clouds were thick, black and looked threatening.
®
8. He likes running, jumping and to ride a bicycle.
®
9. They worked carefully, quickly and were quiet.
®
10. The vegetables were fresh, tender and tasted delicious.
®

Exercise 6: Match each part in column A with each part in column B.

	A		B
1	My sister's hand-writing is always so neat,	A	so unless someone disturbs them, an astronaut's footprints will last forever!
2	Reading is an excellent way to increase your vocabulary	B	or you'll fail the speaking test.
3	The student's essay was badly written	C	and appearance.
4	Alcohol can delay your reaction times;	D	and grammar.
5	In March of 1999, more than 130 nations signed a United Nations Treaty banning land mines;	E	therefore, you should never drink and drive.
6	Eating well is important for good health	F	but mine is a total mess.
7	The apartment is very pretty	G	and its rent is quite low.
8	You'd better work on improving your pronunciation	H	and short.
9	I'm not really interested in history,	I	but this lecture was quite interesting.
10	There is no wind on the moon,	J	However, the United States, Russia and China did not sign.

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.
6.	7.	8.	9.	10.

Exercise 7: Rewrite the sentences, using available words.

1. It was raining. We still went to the park. (However)
®
2. She put on a warm coat before going to work. The weather is cold. (Therefore)
®
3. The students easily got high score in the last examination. They were well-prepared. (so)
®
4. He produces things quite slowly. His products are really good. (but)
®
5. She was thinking of buying a new car. Her friend convinced her to buy an used car. (but)
®
6. She is loved by everybody in her factory. She is a very hard worker. (so)
®
7. I felt really sick last night. I couldn't come to your party. (so)
®

8. You don't do your homework. You will get a bad mark. You will be kicked out of school. (if, and)
®
9. The young boy was sent home. He refused to obey the teacher. (Therefore)
®
10. It cost a fortune to renovate our house. It was worth it. (However)
®

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 18: CỤM ĐỘNG TỪ (PHRASAL VERB)

1. Định nghĩa:

Cụm động từ (Phrasal Verb) là kết hợp của một động từ cơ bản đi kèm với một hoặc hai giới từ. Nghĩa của Phrasal Verb không phải luôn luôn là sự kết hợp nghĩa của các từ tạo nên nó. Do đó chúng ta cần lưu ý về mặt ý nghĩa của cụm động từ.

Ví dụ: Look after: trông nom, chăm sóc
Go on: tiếp tục

2. Một số cụm động từ phổ biến trong tiếng Anh.

Bear out = confirm Ví dụ: The other witnesses will bear out what I say	Xác nhận
Bring in = introduce Ví dụ: They want to bring in a bill to limit arms exports	Giới thiệu
Gear up for = prepare for Ví dụ: Cycle organizations are gearing up for National Bike Week.	Chuẩn bị
Pair up with = team up with Ví dụ: Sally decided to pair up with Jason for the dance contest.	Hợp tác
Cut down = reduce Ví dụ: We need to cut the article down to 1 000 words.	Cắt giảm
Look back on = remember Ví dụ: She usually looks back on her childhood.	Nhớ lại
Bring up = raise Ví dụ: He was brought up by his aunt.	Nuôi dưỡng
Hold on = wait Ví dụ: Hold on a minute while I get my breath back.	Chờ đợi
Turn down = refuse Ví dụ: He has been turned down for ten jobs so far.	Từ chối
Talk over = discuss Ví dụ: They talked over the proposal and decided to give it their approval.	Thảo luận
Leave out = not include, omit Ví dụ: If you are a student, you can omit questions 16-18.	Bỏ qua
Break down Ví dụ: The telephone system has broken down.	Đổ vỡ, hư hỏng
Put forward = suggest Ví dụ: Can I put you forward for club secretary	Đề xuất, gợi ý
Dress up Ví dụ: There's no need to dress up. Come as you are.	Ăn vận (trang trọng)
Stand for Ví dụ: The book's by T.C. Smith.' 'What does the 'T.C.' stand for?'	Viết tắt cho
Keep up = continue Ví dụ: Well done! Keep up the good work/Keep it up	Tiếp tục

Look after = take care of Ví dụ: Who's going to look after the children while you're away?	Trông nom, chăm sóc
Work out = calculate Ví dụ: It'll work out cheaper to travel by bus.	Tính toán
Show up = arrive Ví dụ: It was getting late when she finally showed up	Tới, đến
Come about = happen Ví dụ: Can you tell me how the accident came about	Xảy ra
Hold up = stop, delay Ví dụ: An accident is holding up traffic	Dừng lại, hoãn lại
Call off = cancel Ví dụ: The game was called off because of bad weather	Hoãn, hủy bỏ
Look for = expect, hope for Ví dụ: We shall be looking for an improvement in your work this term	Trông đợi
Fix up = arrange Ví dụ: I'll fix you up with a place to stay.	Sắp xếp
Get by = manage to live Ví dụ: How does she get by on such a small salary?	Sống bằng
Check in Ví dụ: Please check in at least an hour before departure.	Làm thủ tục vào cửa
Check out Ví dụ: Please check out at the reception area	Làm thủ tục ra
Drop by (drop in on) Ví dụ: I thought I'd drop in on you while I was passing.	Ghé qua
Come up with Ví dụ: She came up with a new idea for increasing sales.	Nghĩ ra
Call up = phone Ví dụ: She's out for lunch. Please call up later	Gọi điện
Call on = visit Ví dụ: My mother's friends call upon her every Wednesday	Thăm
Think over = consider Ví dụ: Let me think over your request for a day or so.	Xem xét, cân nhắc
Talk over = discuss Ví dụ: They talked over the proposal and decided to give it their approval	Thảo luận
Move on Ví dụ: Can we move on to the next item on the agenda?	Chuyển sang
Go over = examine Ví dụ: Go over your work before you hand it in.	Xem xét
Put sth down = write sth, make a note of sth Ví dụ: The meeting's on the 22nd. Put it down in your diary.	Ghi chép lại
Clear up = tidy Ví dụ: I'm fed up with clearing up after you!	Dọn dẹp
Carry out = execute	Tiến hành

Vi dụ: Extensive tests have been carried out on the patient.	
Break in Vi dụ: Burglars had broken in while we were away.	Đột nhập
Back up Vi dụ: I'll back you up if they don't believe you.	Ủng hộ
Turn away = turn down Vi dụ: They had nowhere to stay so I couldn't turn them away	Từ chối
Wake up = get up Vi dụ: Wake up and listen!	Thức dậy
Warm up Vi dụ: Let's warm up before entering the main part	Khởi động
Turn off Vi dụ: They've turned off the water while they repair a burst pipe.	Tắt
Turn on Vi dụ: I'll turn the television on.	Bật
Fall down Vi dụ: Many buildings in the old part of the city are falling down.	Xuống cấp
Find out Vi dụ: I haven't found anything out about him yet.	Tìm ra
Get off Vi dụ: We got off straight after breakfast.	Khởi hành
Give up Vi dụ: They gave up without a fight	Từ bỏ
Go up = increase Vi dụ: The price of cigarettes is going up	Tăng lên
Pick someone up Vi dụ: I'll pick you up at five	Đón ai đó
Take up Vi dụ: He takes up his duties next week	Bắt đầu một hoạt động mới
Speed up Vi dụ: Can you try and speed things up a bit?	Tăng tốc
Grow up Vi dụ: Their children have all grown up and left home now	Lớn lên
Catch up with Vi dụ: Go on ahead. I'll catch up with you	Theo kịp
Cut off Vi dụ: He had his finger cut off in an accident at work.	Cắt bỏ cái gì
Account for Vi dụ: How do you account for the show's success?	Giải thích
Belong to Vi dụ: Who does this watch belong to?	Thuộc về
Break away Vi dụ: The prisoner broke away from his guards.	Bỏ trốn
Delight in Vi dụ: She delights in walking	Thích thú về

Exercise 1: Choose the correct answers.

- Brian asked Judy _____ to dinner and a movie.
A. out B. on C. for D. of
- My wife backed _____ me over my decision to quit my job.
A. down B. up C. of D. for
- Our car _____ at the side of the highway in the snowstorm.
A. broke into B. broke away C. broke in D. broke down
- Somebody _____ last night and stole our stereo.
A. broke off B. broke in C. broke out D. broke up
- The firemen had to break _____ the room to rescue the children.
A. off B. up C. out D. into
- The bomb _____ when he rang the bell.
A. went over B. went on C. went out D. went off
- Does this jacket _____ my trousers?
A. go with B. go through with C. go ahead D. go off
- He _____ about his new car all the time.
A. goes over B. goes on C. goes out D. goes off
- Do you think you could _____ this work with me some time, Peter?
A. go over B. go on C. go out D. go off
- It is generally accepted that in today's society women have access _____ education and can promote themselves much more easily than years ago.
A. to B. up C. on D. for

Exercise 2: Choose the correct answers.

- It took women a long time to struggle _____ the right to vote.
A. for B. with C. against D. upon
- I think women are suited _____ many important things, besides childbearing and homemaking.
A. of B. on C. for D. about
- Women are increasingly involved _____ the public life.
A. of B. in C. with D. from
- If you have an old blanket, _____ it along so that we have something to sit on at the beach.
A. bring B. go C. put D. keep
- Although the team was both mentally and physically exhausted, they _____ on walking.
A. stopped B. kept C. took D. put
- Before the plane _____ off, the flight attendant told everyone to fasten their seat belts and put their chairs in an upright position.
A. woke B. brought C. kept D. took
- Don't forget to _____ your gloves on. It is cold outside.
A. let B. make C. put D. fix
- Everything is _____ you. I cannot make _____ my mind yet.
A. out off/ on B. up to/ up C. away from/ for D. on for/ off
- There is no food left. Someone must have eaten it _____.
A. out B. up C. off D. along
- If something urgent has _____ up, phone me immediately and I will help you.
A. picked B. come C. kept D. brought

Exercise 3: Choose the correct answers: synonym.

- If you don't pay your rent, your landlord is going to kick you out!
A. lend you some money B. play football with you
C. give you a kick D. force you to leave
- Yesterday I ran into Sam at the grocery store. I had not seen him for years.
A. met B. visited C. said goodbye to D. made friends with
- Let's go over that report again before we submit it.
A. dictate B. print C. read carefully D. type
- I will not stand for your bad attitude any longer.
A. like B. tolerate C. mean D. care
- Be careful! The tree is going to fall.
A. Look out B. Look up C. Look on D. Look after
- The organization was established in 1950 in the USA.

- A. come around B. set up C. made out D. put on
7. Within their home country, National Red Cross and Red Crescent societies assume the duties and responsibilities of a national relief society.
- A. take on B. get off C. go about D. put in
8. The bomb exploded in the garage; fortunately no one hurt.
- A. put on B. went off C. got out D. kept up
9. They had to delay their trip because of the bad weather.
- A. get through B. put off C. keep up with D. go over
10. He did not particularly want to play any competitive sport.
- A. use up B. do with C. take up D. go on

Exercise 4: Choose the correct answers: synonym.

1. It took me a very long time to recover from the shock of her death.
- A. turn off B. take on C. get over D. keep up with
2. I am tired because I went to bed late last night.
- A. stayed up B. kept off C. put out D. brought up
3. Did your son pass the university entrance examination?
- A. make up B. get along C. go up D. get through
4. What may happen if John will not arrive in time?
- A. go along B. count on C. keep away D. turn up
5. They decided to postpone their journey till the end of the month because of the epidemic.
- A. take up B. turn round C. put off D. do with
6. The small white flowers are my favorite. They give off a wonderful honey smell that scents the entire garden.
- A. release B. stop C. end D. melt
7. Johnny has not smoked since 2000.
- A. given up smoking B. given off smoking
C. take off smoking D. take up smoking
8. I couldn't make out what he had talked about because I was not used to his accent.
- A. stand B. understand C. write D. interrupt
9. I'm sorry. I didn't mean to interrupt you. Please, go on and finish what you were saying.
- A. talk B. quit C. continue D. stop
10. The firefighters fought the blaze while the crowd was looking on it.
- A. blowing B. watering C. preventing D. watching

Exercise 5: Complete the sentences with available word phrase.

broke down	put away	came up to	got off
pick up	cleaning up	took off	resulted in
depending on	getting on	broke up	cut off

1. The passengers had to wait because the plane _____ one hour late.
2. She _____ her car to _____ some wild flowers.
3. Boy! _____ all your toys and. go to bed right now.
4. The water supply of the building was _____ because the pipes burst.
5. How are you _____ with your work? - It is OK.
6. The stranger _____ me and asked, "Is there a post office near here?"
7. The efforts for the advancement of women have _____ several respectively achievement in women's life and work.
8. I cannot believe Peter and Mary _____ last week. They have been married for almost fifteen years. I hope they get back together.
9. They were late for work because their car _____.
10. My husband and I take turns _____ the kitchen _____ who gets home from work earlier.

Exercise 6: Complete each sentence with a suitable preposition.

1. The customer had tried _____ some blouses but none of them suited her.
2. My husband spends far more time helping our three kids _____ homework and studying for tests than I do.
3. What does "www" stand _____? Is it short for "world wide web?"
4. I always run out _____ money before the end of the month.
5. I've just spent two weeks looking _____ an aunt of mine who's been ill
6. It's very cold in here. Do you mind if I turn _____ the heating?

10. He died_____heart disease.

Exercise 7: Complete each sentence with a suitable verb.

1. They gave me a form and told me to _____ it in.
2. I'm going to bed now. Can you _____ me up at 6:30?
3. I have got something in my eye and I can't _____ it out.
4. A cat tried to catch the bird, but it _____ away just in time.
5. My shoes are dirty. I had better _____ them off before going into the house.
6. You are walking too fast. Can you _____ up with you.
7. I can't hear you very well. Can you _____ up a little?
8. We _____ forward to the top floor of the building to admire the view.
9. I love to _____ up at the stars in the sky at night.
10. I have been standing for the last two hours. I am going to _____ down for a bit.

Exercise 8: Complete each sentence with available phrases.

invited to

related to

prevented me from

provide you with

spend much money on

takes good care of

get off

devoted all his life to

insists on

accused of

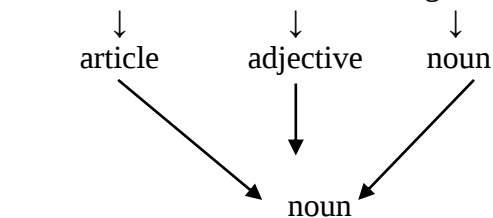
1. William _____ getting up early, even on weekends.
2. Jane doesn't _____ clothes.
3. She always _____ her children.
4. House cats are distantly _____ lions and tigers.
5. Pasteur _____ science.
6. We are here to _____ the best service possible.
7. Mrs. Liz was _____ having stolen the car.
8. Last night I was _____ a formal get-together and I enjoyed myself a great deal.
9. They _____ talking to that woman.
10. Take the number 7 bus and _____ at Forest Road.

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 19 : WORD FORMS

1.TIẾN TRÌNH CHUNG:

- Nhắc lại khái niệm cơ bản về ngữ pháp (definitions of noun, verb, adjective, adverb ...).
- Dấu hiệu nhận biết các từ loại hay cách thành lập từ loại (the part(s) of speech and basic ways to form new words in English).
- Hướng dẫn học sinh xem xét các từ liên quan ở phía trước hoặc phía sau để loại suy ra hình thức đúng của từ cần điền.

Ví du: she is a beautiful girl (beauty)



2. TIẾN TRÌNH CỤ THỂ:

- Đây là phần gây ra cho học sinh bối rối, khó hiểu nên giáo viên chúng ta dẫn dắt trực tiếp vào từ cần dạy, tạo sự tập trung của học sinh.
- Cung cấp từ (giúp học sinh phát hiện ra từ loại của từ cho sẵn dựa vào hình thái của từ).
 - + Danh từ là từ có hậu tố: - tion, - sion, -er, -or ...
 - + Tính từ là từ có hậu tố : - able, - ful, - less, - al ...
 - + Trạng từ thông thường có hậu tố: - ly
- Cung cấp nghĩa
- Luyện đọc cho học sinh (giáo viên đọc mẫu, học sinh đọc đồng thanh)

3. CÁC BƯỚC THỰC HIỆN CỤ THỂ.

3.1. NOUNS.

3.1.1. Definition: Noun is a word used as the name of a person, thing, animal, place ...

Ex: Student (person)

Blackboard (thing)

Cat (animal)

Countryside (place)

3.1.2- The ways to form a noun.

FORM	EXAMPLES
a- Verb + AR ER OR	- sailor, actor ... - teacher, driver, viewer, singer... - beggar, liar ...
b- Verb + ION ING MENT	- action, invention, liberation, conclusion ... - writing, making, liking, cooking, learning... - movement, development, investment, punishment, amusement ...
c- Noun /Adjective + DOM	- kingdom, freedom, wisdom
d- Noun/Adjective + HOOD	- boyhood, neighbourhood, childhood, brotherhood, falsehood.
e- Noun/ Adjective + ISM	- capitalism, patriotism, terrorism, heroism, communism. - socialism, racialism, colonialism
f- Adjective + NESS TY ITY	- happiness, laziness, illness, sickness ... - cruelty, loyalty, difficulty ... - possibility, ability, capability, ability, curiosity ...
g- Verb + ANT	- assistant, accountant, applicant, contestant...
h- Adjective → Noun	- angry → anger - long → length - brave → bravery - proud → pride - deep → depth - terrible → terror - famous → fame - young → youth - high → height - hot → heat - true → truth - just → justice
i- Verb → Noun	- choose → choice - live → life - prove → proof - strike → stroke - sing → song - advise → advice - enter → entry - fail → failure - feed → food - laugh → laughter - renew → renewal - sit → seat - speak → speech - see → sight - sell → sale - die → death - bury → burial - lose → loss

3.2. ADJECTIVES:

3.2.1-Definition: Adjective is a word that modifies a noun. It usually stands before a noun

Ex: a horse

a charming room

an apple

a furnished house

this old house

3.2.2- The way to form an adjective:

FORM	EXAMPLES
Noun - Adjective	- choir → choral - circle → circular - union → united - fashion → fashionable - honour → honourable - notice → noticeable - reason → reasonable - value → valuable - neglect → neglected - picture → picturesque - charity → charitable - gold → golden - wool → woolen - wood → wooden - earth → earthen - North → Northern

FORM	EXAMPLES	
	- terror → terrible - sense → sensible - horror → horrible - access → accessible - luxury → luxurious - victory → victorious - vapour → vapourous - variety → various - danger → dangerous - dangour → dangourous - advangtage → advangtageous - mountain → mountainous - venom → venomous - peril → perilous - caution → cautious - citrus → citreous - fortune → fortunate - apprehension → apprehensive	- West → Western - fury → furious - glory → glorious - melody → melodious - mystery → mysterious - prosper → prosperous - bounty → bounteous - clamour → clamorous - murder → murderous - disaster → disastrous - courage → courageous - strain → strainous - volume → voluminous - mischief → mischievous - advent → adventitious - affection → affectionate - authority → authoritative - intuition → intuitive
Verb → adjective	- abhor → abhorrent - obey → obedient - absorb → absorbent - notice → noticeable - compel → compelling - please → pleasing - learn → learned - vacate → vacant - marvel → marvelous - strain → strenuous - quarrel → quarrelsome - benefit → beneficial - abuse → abusive - collect → collective - create → creative - decide → decisive - describe → descriptive - affirm → affirmative - image → imaginative - deceive → deceptive/ deceitful	- vary → various - accept → acceptable - admire → admirable - choose → choosy - volunteer → voluntary - unite → united - comply → compliant - grieve → grievous - prosper → prosperous - study → studious - meddle → meddlesome - criticize → critical - attend → attentive - compete → competitive - destroy → destructive - express → expressive - extend → extensive - decorate → decorative - inform → informative
noun - FUL	- harmful - pocketful - handful - useful	- peaceful - basketful - successful - helpful
noun -LESS	- childless - harmless - odourless - hopeless - useless	- helpless - homeless - noiseless - thoughtless
noun -LY	- manly - yearly - brotherly - fatherly	- hourly - daily
noun -LIKE	- lifelike - warlike - statemanlike	- childlike - godlike
noun - Y	- silvery - snowy - crafty - rainy	- starry - healthy - silky - shadowy

FORM	EXAMPLES				
	- faulty		- wintery		
	- dirty				
	- sandy				
noun - ISH	- foolish				
	- childish				
	- selfish				
	- amateurish				
noun -AL	- central		- optional		
	- accidental		- natural		
	- traditional		- magical		
	- occasional		- industrial		
	- personal		- agricultural		
<i>Noun→ Adjective</i>	- difference	different	- strain	strainous	
	- patience	patient	- venom	venomous	
	- independence	independent	- volume	voluminous	
	- vigilance	vigilant	- peril	perilous	
	- distance	distant	- mischief	mischievous	
	- circumstance	circumstantial	- caution	cautious	
	- volcano	volcanic	- advent	adventitious	
	- sympathy	sympathic	- citrus	citreous	
	- hero	heroic	- affection	affectionate	
	- giant	giantic	- fortune	fortunate	
	- energy	energic	- authority	authoritative	
	- metal	metallic	- mystery	mysterious	
	- poet	poetic	- victory	victorious	
	- academy	academic	- prosper	prosperous	
	- anemia	anemic	- vapour	vapourous	
	- athlete	athletic	- variety	various	
	- quarrel	quarrelsome	- bounty	bounteous	
	- trouble	troublesome	- clamour	clamourous	
	- choir	choral	- danger	dangerous	
	- circle	circular	- murder	murderous	
	- picture	picturesque	- dangour	dangourous	
	- charity	charitable	- disaster	disastrious	
	- fashion	fashionable	- advantage	advantageous	
	- honour	honourable	- courage	courageous	
	- notice	noticeable	- mountain	mountainous	
	- reason	reasonable	- wood	wooden	
	- sense	sensible	- earth	earthen	
	- horror	horrible	- North	Northern	
	- gold	golden	- West	Western	
	- wool	woolen	- fury	furious	
	- glory	glorious	- benefit	beneficial	
	- apprehension	apprehensive	- criticize	critical	
	- intuition	intuitive	- abuse	abusive	
	- abhor	abhorrent	- attend	attentive	
	- obey	obedient	- collect	collective	
	- absorb	absorbent	- compete	competitive	
	- acquiesce	acquiescent	- create	creative	
	<i>Verb → Adjective</i>	- admire	admirable	- decide	decisive
		- notice	noticeable	- express	expressive
		- choose	choosy	- extend	extensive
- volunteer		voluntary	- select	selective	
- compel		compelling	- affirm	affirmative	
- learn		learned	- decorate	decorative	
- comply		compliant	- image	imaginative	
- vacate		vacant	- inform	informative	

FORM	EXAMPLES			
	- grieve	grievous	- deceive	deceptive / deceitful
	- marvel	marvelous	- meddle	meddlesome
	- study	studious		
	- quarrel	quarrelsome		

3.3- Adverbs:

3.3.1- Definition: Adverbs express how, when, or where an action is done

- Adverbs of manner: express how an action is done

actively calmly fast late together so
alone somehow carefully anyhow also how

Ex: We went to school together

The birds sang sweetly

- Adverbs of time: express when an action is done

today once before since now soon always seldom
rarely already early ago then often sometimes

Ex: It often rains in the tropics.

I have never seen a seahorse.

- Adverbs of place: express where an action is done

here in out above below past under far everywhere
down up around along way upstairs near there

Ex: I followed him everywhere

Come in

3.3.2- The way to form adverbs:

ADJECTIVE + LY → ADVERB OF MANER

♣ NOTES:

➤ There is a change of the final vowel when necessary

Ex: lucky → luckily

happy → happily

slow → slowly

➤ Some adverbs have the same form as adjectives

Ex: - I went to New York by a fast train.
(adj)

- He ran fast.
(adv)

- We were late for school.
(adj)

- We went to school late.
(adv)

3.4- VERBS:

3.4.1- Definition : a verb is a word or a group which expresses an action or state of being

3.4.1.1- Transitive verb: is one which is used with an object

Ex: The waiter brings coffee (object)

The student learns English (object)

3.4.1.2- Intransitive verb: is one which is used without an object. It can not be used in the passive voice.

Ex: The sun rises.

The baby is sleeping.

♣ Notes:

➤ Most of English verbs are used both transitively and intransitively

Ex: - The boy rings the bell.

- The bell rings.

- The girl is singing a song

- The girl is singing

➤ Few verbs are used transitively or intransitively

Ex: - The boy lays the book.(object)

- The boy is lying on the table.

- He sets the bird free.

- He sits on the chair.

3.4.1.3- Auxiliary verb: Auxiliary verb is one which helps other verbs to form tenses, moods or voices.

- The auxiliary verbs : be, will, shall. Do do, did.

Ex: - He is studying English

- She will come to the party.

- An apple is eaten by Mary.

- They have gone away.

- Tom doesn't understand the lesson.

3.4.1.4- Modal verb: Modal verb is one which can't conjugate in all tenses, and moods.

The modal verbs are: will, shall, can, may, might, need, dare, used to, ought to

Ex: - He can swim.

- Can't he swim ?

3.4.2- The ways to form verbs

FORM	EXAMPLES			
NOUN → VERB	Camp	encamp	horror	horrify
	Circle	encircle	justice	justify
	Courage	encourage	liquid	liquefy
	Danger	endanger	terror	terrify
	Roll	enroll	belief	believe
	Slavery	enslaver	blood	bleed
	Tomb	entomb	brass	braise
	Power	empower	glass	glaze
	Calm	becalm	deceit	deceive
	Friend	befriend	deed	do
	Company	accompany	endurance	endure
	Custom	accustom	food	feed
	Actor	act	gold	gild
	Creator	create	grief	grieve
	Addition	add	growth	grow
	Circulation	circulate	knee	kneel
	Competition	compete	knowledge	know
	Composition	compose	life	live
	Description	describe	pleasure	please
	Dictation	dictate	product	produce
	Division	divide	proof	prove
	Education	educate	relief	relieve
	Illustration	illustrate	sale	sell
	Imitation	imitate	shelf	shelve
	Obligation	obligate	song	sing
	Provision	provide	speech	speak
	Solution	solve	success	succeed
	Suspicious	suspect	thought	think
	Liberty	liberate	price	prize
	Wreath	wreath	tale	tell
	Bath	bathe	colony	colonize
	Breath	breathe	drama	dramatize
	Cloth	clothe	moisture	moisturize
	Bright	brighten	nation	nationalize
	Broad	broaden	sympathy	sympathize
	Sweet	sweeten	vandal	vandalize
	Trial	try	vapour	vapourize

FORM	EXAMPLES			
ADJECTIVE → VERB	Dirt	dirty	vitality	vitalize
	Beauty	beautify	vacancy	vacate
	Class	classify	vaccine	vaccinate
	Glory	glorify		
	Deep	deepen	large	enlarge
	Dark	darken	modern	modernize
	Fat	fatten	simple	simplify
	Short	shorten	cool	cool
	Sharp	sharpen	full	fill
	Straight	straighten	hale	heal
	Tight	tighten	weak	weaken
	Wide	widen		

4.ÁP DỤNG THỰC TIỄN

4.1- **SUBJECT + VERB + ADJ/ ADV/ NOUN**.

4.1.1- **SUBJECT + BE / LINKING VERBS + ADJ** (linking verbs: become, look, seem, turn out, find, make, set, keep ...)

4.1.2- **SUBJECT + VERB + ADV**

Ex: - The flowers are fresh (adj)

- Peter ran faster than I did. (adv)

- We are late for school (adj)

- We go to school late. (adv)

- I feel interested in this book (adj)

4.1.3- **SUBJECT + VERB + NOUN**

mạo từ (a / an / the).

từ chỉ định (this / that / these / those).

từ bất định (some / many / any).

từ sở hữu (my / her / our ...).

Ex: - She is a beautiful girl. (beauty)

- He has a preference for English novels. (prefer)

4.1.4- **SUBJECT + VERB + THE + ADJ** (Dùng như danh từ)

Ex: - Our pupils are raising money for the poor. (poor)

adj

- The rich are always selfish. (rich)

adj

- Ngoài các tính từ thông thường, ta cũng có thể sử dụng động từ : past participle (Ved / V₂), present participle (Ving)

- Present participle: dùng như tính từ mang tính chủ động bỏ nghĩa cho danh từ đã tác động, danh từ gây ra hành động đó.

- Past participle : dùng như tính từ mang tính bị động, bỏ nghĩa cho danh từ nhận lấy sự tác động hành động đó (ngoài sự phân biệt về nghĩa, ta còn có thể căn cứ vào hình thái của chủ ngữ)

- Ex: It was a very exciting football match (excite)

↓ present participle

Subject (thing / animal)

The children were excited in Christmas day. (excite)

↓ past participle

Subject (person / people)

4.2- **SUBJECT + VERB + TO INFINITIVE**



afford, want, forget, arrange, need, ask, dare, agree, attempt, tend

learn(how), plan, decide, pretend, threaten, appear, offer, expect,

Ex: - I like George but I think he pretends to talk too much.

- I decide not to go out because of the weather.

NOTES:

➤ Dare + bare infinitive / to infinitive

➤ Daren't + bare infinitive

Ex:- I wouldn't dare ask him.

- I would not dare to ask him.

- I daren't tell him what happened.

4.3- SUBJECT + VERB + OBJECT + TO INFINITIVE



advise / allow / ask / beg / encourage / hate / intent / invite / would like
/ need / persuade / remind tell / want / warn / expect / help / would
prefer / order / force / enable

Ex: - Remind me to phone Ann tomorrow.

- I got Jack to repair my car.

4.4- SUBJECT + VERB + BARE INFINITIVE



can / could may / might / must / ought to / have to / would rather

Ex: - I would rather do it later.

- He can solve the problem.

4.5- SUBJECT + VERB + OBJECT + BARE INFINITIVE



have / let / help / make / get

Ex: - His mother makes him go to bed at 9 o'clock.

- The teacher had his students do homework.

4.6- SUBJECT + VERB + VING



can't bear / can't help / can't stand / finish / enjoy / mind / suggest /
fancy / image / risk / give up / stop / put off / delay / postpone / carry on
/ continue / go on / regret / admit / avoid / consider / involve / practice /
miss / hate / love / like / dislike

Ex: - I don't fancy going out this evening.

- I'll do the shopping when I have finished cleaning the flat.

- When I'm on holiday, I enjoy not having to get up early

♣ NOTES:

➤ DÙNG Ving sau các thành ngữ

It's no use

It's no good

There's no point in

It's (not) worth

(have) difficulty

a waste of time / money

spend / waste (time)

Ex: - I had difficulty finding a place to live

- I spent hours trying to repair the clock

- Chúng ta dùng Ving sau động từ “go” để chỉ một số hoạt động (thể thao)
- | | |
|-------------|----------------|
| go shopping | go sailing |
| go climbing | go fishing |
| go swimming | go sightseeing |
| go skiing | go riding |

4.7- **VERB + TO INFINITIVE / VING**

4.7.1 -love, like, begin, start, intend, continue + to infinitive / Ving (không có sự thay đổi nghĩa đáng kể)

4.7.2- có một số động từ vừa theo sau là Ving hoặc To infinitive có sự thay đổi nghĩa:

* VERB + to infinitive: mang ý nghĩa của một mục đích, một dự định, hoặc một trách nhiệm trong tương lai.

- REMEMBER + to infinitive : nhớ để thực hiện
- REMEMBER + Ving: nhớ lại sự việc đã được thực hiện

Ex: - He remembers to lock the door.

- He remembers locking the door.

* TRY + To infinitive : cố gắng thực hiện

* TRY + Ving : thử làm

Ex: - I'm very tired. I tried to keep my eyes open but I couldn't.

- I've got a terrible headache. I tried taking an aspirin but it didn't help.

• STOP + T infinitive: dừng lại để làm việc gì.

• STOP + Ving : từ bỏ làm một việc gì

Ex: - Stop talking in the class!

- He stopped to smoke a cigarette. But it was so windy that he failed to do it.

*REGRET+ To infinitive : hối tiếc để làm việc gì.

* REGERT + Ving hối tiếc đã làm việc gì.

Ex: A: I regret to inform that you failed the exam.

B: Oh, dear! I regret not studying hard.

• NEED + T o infinitive : cần thiết để làm việc gì.

• NEED + Ving : cần được làm.

Ex: - I need to take more exercises.

- The batteries in the radio need changing / to be changed.

♣ **NOTES:**

- CÁC CẶP ĐỘNG TỪ SAU : permit = allow (cho phép)
advise = recommend (khuyến bảo)

Có hai cách viết cho những động từ trên.

SUBJECT + VERB + OBJECT + TO INFINITIVE

SUBJECT + VERB + Ving

Ex: - The police didn't allow us to go there.-

- The police didn't allow going there.

- The doctor recommended me to take that medicine before meals.

- The doctor recommened taking that medicine before meals.

- TO BE ALLOWED / PERMITTED + TO DO SOMETHING : được phép làm gì

Ex: - You aren't allowed to use the office phone for personal calls.

- She was allowed to visit him.

4.8.- **SUBJECT + VERB + IT + ADJ / NOUN + TO INFINITIVE.**

Ex:- He doesn't think it interesting to talk with John.

- They considered it a great honour to be invited to your wedding party.

4.9.- **NOUN / VING / TO INFINITIVE + V + O**

EX:- To succeed in an examination is not an easy thing.

- Swimming is a good sport.
- Speech is silver but silence is gold.

4.10. **-ADV + S + V + O** (vị trí thông thường của trạng từ nằm ở cuối câu, đầu câu, hay ở giữa tùy theo vị trí của trạng từ cần điền)

Ex: -Have you finished the final report yet?

- She looks thin but actually she is very healthy.
- I'm extremely sorry for the delay.

- Computers are recent achievements in our time. I have read these scientific papers recently

III. Supply the correct comparative form of adjective in brackets.

Ex: He is (intelligent) more intelligent than his brother

- I have never had a (*delicious*) _____ meal than that.
- This shirt is too small. I need a (*large*) _____ size.
- It's (*cheap*) _____ to go by car than to go by train.
- A new house is (*expensive*) _____ than an old one.
- His job is (*important*) _____ than mine.
- Nobody is (*happy*) _____ than Miss. Snow.
- John is much (*strong*) _____ than I thought.
- Benches are (*comfortable*) _____ than arm-chairs.
- Bill is (*good*) _____ than you thought.
- Sam's conduct is (*bad*) _____ than Paul's.

Answer key

- | | |
|-------------------|---------------------|
| 1. more delicious | 2. larger |
| 3. cheaper | 4. more expensive |
| 5. more important | 6. happier |
| 7. stronger | 8. more comfortable |
| 9. better | 10. worse |

IV. Complete the following questions with the comparative form of the adjectives in brackets.

- Which river is _____, the Red River or the Mekong River? (*long*)
- Which city is _____, London or Rome? (*old*)
- Which city is _____, New York or Paris? (*big*)
- Which mountain is _____, Mount Everest or Mount Fuji? (*high*)
- Which language is _____, Chinese or English? (*difficult*)
- Which animals are _____, cats or horses? (*fast*)
- Which month in Vietnam is _____, October or December? (*cold*)
- Which animals are _____, dogs or dolphins? (*intelligent*)

Answer key

- | | | | |
|-------------------|-----------|-----------|---------------------|
| 1. longer | 2. older | 3. bigger | 4. higher |
| 5. more difficult | 6. faster | 7. colder | 8. more intelligent |

VI. Give the correct form of comparative in the blank.

Ex: Nam is _____ than his sister. (*tall*)

Nam is taller than his sister.

- Mr. Tan works _____ hours than my father. (*many*)
- Summer vacation is the _____ vacation. (*long*)
- Vietnamese students have _____ vacations than American students. (*few*)
- He drinks _____ wine than Mr. Hai. (*little*)
- Christmas is one of the _____ vacations in America. (*important*)
- This old woman has _____ money than all of her daughters. (*much*)
- Bill is _____ than you. (*good*)
- These shoes are _____ than those shoes. (*expensive*)

V. Give the correct form of superlative.

- This is a **TALL** building.
→ This is the _____ building in London.
- That was an **EASY** exercise.

- That was the _____ exercise of the test.
3. This is a **COMFORTABLE** armchair.
- This is the _____ armchair in this shop.
4. This is a **BIG** cheese burger.
- This is the _____ cheese burger of the McDonald's Company.
5. That was a very **BAD** conversation.
- That was the _____ conversation I have had.
6. That was a **DIFFICULT** exercise.
- That was the _____ exercise of the test.
7. He's got a **GOOD** pen.
- He's got the _____ pen of the class.
8. This is an **INDIFFERENT** pupil
- This is the _____ pupil of my class.
9. He is a **FUNNY** boy.
- He is the _____ boy in the world.
10. He is **LESS** young than the others.
- He is the _____ young student of my class.

IV. Complete the sentences below using the correct form of adjectives.

Ex: - Lan is _____ Hoa. (tall)

Lan is taller than Hoa.

- Armchairs are _____ chairs. (comfortable)

Armchairs are more comfortable than chairs.

1. A new house is _____ an old one. (expensive)
2. Motorbikes are _____ bicycles. (fast)
3. My television is _____ his television. (modern)
4. Summer is _____ Spring. (hot)
5. Jane is _____ her sister. (beautiful)
6. Skirts are _____ dresses. (cheap)
7. Her English is _____ my English. (good)
8. A bicycle is often _____ a car in busy cities. (convenient)

V. Complete the sentences below using the superlative form of adjectives.

Ex: - Nam is _____ student in his class. (young)

Nam is the youngest student in his class.

- These toys are _____ in the toy store. (expensive)

These toys are the most expensive in the toy store.

1. Nile River is _____ river in the world. (long)
2. This book is _____ of these books. (interesting)
3. Ho Chi Minh City is _____ city in Viet Nam. (big)
4. They are _____ students in my class. (good)
5. These house are _____ in the village. (beautiful)
6. Winter is _____ season in the year. (cold)
7. Airplane is _____ means of transport. (fast)
8. He is _____ person in the meeting. (important)

III. Supply the correct form of the words.

1. What is the (high) _____ of that mountain? - About 2000 meters.
2. Lan is the (small) _____ of the three girls.
3. Jane is the (young) _____ of the two girls.
4. The country is (quiet) _____ than the city.
5. Which color do you like (good) _____?
6. We must (take) _____ an umbrella. It (rain) _____.
7. The weather is becoming (cold) _____.
8. He (stay) _____ there for two days when he comes there.
9. My best friend (write) _____ to me every week.
10. You can borrow my umbrella. I (not need) _____ it at the moment.

IX. Give the correct words.

1. You must be _____ when you cross the road. CARE
2. The most popular after-school _____ in our country are ACT

football, badminton and basketball.

3. September is the _____ month of the year.
4. Today we have literature, _____ education and history.
5. Minh is _____ at English than I am.
6. English is an _____ and important subject.
7. The library in our city has over 50 _____.
8. My birthday is on the _____ of September.
9. My parents work at a Secondary School. They are _____ of English.
10. I visit my grandparents _____ a month.

NINE
PHYSICS
GOOD
INTEREST
EMPLOY
TWENTY
TEACH
ONE

III. Give the correct form of the words.

1. What is the _____ of this tower? (high)
2. You should stay _____. (health)
3. How _____ is the river? (length)
4. Lan was absent from class because of her _____. (sick)
5. He has a bad cold. He feels very _____. (pleasant)
6. I have an _____ with my doctor at 5 p.m. (appoint)

VII. Give the correct form of the words in comparative.

1. Which is the (big) city in Viet Nam ?
2. Spring is (warm) than Fall. But Summer is the (hot) season of a year.
3. Hoa is the (good) student in our class.
4. The Nile River is the (long) river in the world.
5. The city is (noisy) than the country.

VIII. Fill the spaces with the correct comparative adjectives.

1. I am _____ (tall) than my sister.
2. My mum thinks that cats are _____ (good) pets than dogs.
3. A Mercedes is _____ (expensive) a Fiat.
4. A swordfish is _____ (fast) than a jellyfish.
5. A blue whale is _____ (heavy) than twenty-five elephants.
6. You look _____ (thin) than last month. Have you lost weight?
7. Bicycles are _____ (slow) than cars.
8. Irene is _____ (clever) than Silvia.
9. Max is _____ (old) than John.
10. Computers are _____ (cheap) than mobile phones.
11. Is your brother _____ (tall) than you?
12. I think Spanish is _____ (easy) than Japanese.
13. Our dog is _____ (nice) than your dog.
14. Glass bottles are _____ (good) than plastic bottles.
15. My hair is _____ (long) than yours.
16. Sharks are _____ (dangerous) than other fish.
17. This situation is _____ (serious) than the last one
18. He is _____ (smart) than his brother.
19. A dolphin is _____ (intelligent) than a shark.
20. Elaine is _____ (wise) than her sister.
21. Daniela is _____ (funny) than me.
22. Tony is _____ (happy) than Max.
23. Sandra is _____ (busy) than Sam.
24. The sea is _____ (large) than a lake.
25. My job is _____ (easy) than yours.
26. Health is _____ (important) than money.
27. This car is _____ (comfortable) than yours.
28. My house is _____ (clean) than her house.
29. I am _____ (strong) than you.
30. A baby blue whale gets _____ (big) than a great white shark.

Exercise 1. Complete by changing the form of the word in capitals.

1. Running after that thief was very _____ of you!
2. You looked so _____ when you fell asleep on the sofa.

COURAGE
PEACE

3. All four of my grandparents are still_____.	LIVE
4. Did you vote in the last_____?	ELECT
5. It can be very difficult for _____ when they leave prison and go back into the community.	PRISON
6. At the end of the film, you hear a single _____and then A1 Pacino falls to the ground.	SHOOT
7. It's_____! I've lost my glasses again!	BELIEVE
8. I think we're all in_____ that something must be done about the problem.	AGREE
9. Should I write "British" or "English" as my_____?	NATION
10. We'll only have real_____ when women earn as much money as men.	EQUAL

Exercise 2. The word at the end of each of the following sentences can be used to form a word that fits suitably in the blank.

1. Is she _____ enough to run one kilometer?	GOOD
2. "Ow! Be careful with that coffee." - "Look, now I have a _____ on my arm"	BURNING
3. Rob has a _____ of 39.5°C	TEMPERATE
4. Don't eat so quickly. You'll get a _____.	TEETH
5. I have a _____ in my back. I'm going to lie down.	PAINFUL
6. That's a bad _____. Why don't you have a glass of water?	COUGHING
7. "I have _____." - "Why don't you telephone the doctor?"	STOMACH
8. I feel _____. Quick, I must get to the bathroom!	SICKNESS
9. My arm _____ after the table tennis match.	HURT
10. "I have a _____." - "That's because you watch too much TV."	HEAD

Exercise 3. Give the correct form of the words in capital.

1. Tran Van Cam is my favourite_____. He is famous for the painting "Little sister Diep".	ART
2. Tra Giang is one of the most famous _____ of Viet Nam. Many people love her.	ACT
3. I think that good knowledge of arts and music is a _____ for anyone.	NECESSARY
4. The _____ she gave last night was marvelous.	PERFORM
5. Water puppetry _____ in the villages of the Red River Delta.	ORIGIN
6. The DAN BAU is a Vietnamese traditional _____ instrument.	MUSIC
7. _____ is the art or taking and processing photographs.	PHOTOGRAPH
8. I don't like pop music because it is not as _____ as rock and roll.	EXCITE
9. Peter has received a letter of _____ to see a water puppet show this Sunday.	INVITE
10. Mai wanted to share her _____ with other people.	PLEASE

Exercise 4. Give the correct form of the words in capital.

1. Thong Nhat Palace is a _____ attraction in HCMC.	TOUR
2. The Temple of Literature is considered one of the most historical sites of Viet Nam.	IMPORT
3. The school is quite normal, but its _____ are really beautiful.	SURROUND
4. The students were carefully _____ for the final exam.	PREPARE
5. The university grows and receives _____ from the society.	RECOGNISE
6. Was the _____ of the first Doctors' Stone Tablet ordered by King Le Thanh Tong?	ERRECT

- | | |
|---|-------------------|
| 7. Is Hung King's Temple a _____ place in Viet Nam? | CULTURE |
| 8. Many students and teachers have _____ for the development of the school. | CONTRIBUTE |
| 9. The _____ was a great success and it became famous all over the world. | UNIVERSE |
| 10. Many _____ and scholars discussed the change of the curricula. | EDUCATE |

Exercise 5. Give the correct form of the words given to complete the sentence.

- | | |
|--|-------------------|
| 1. This film made a strong _____ on me. | IMPRESS |
| 2. Have you ever seen this comedy? It's really _____. | FUN |
| 3. The film was _____ though they spent millions of dollars making it. | SUCCEED |
| 4. I love action films. They're very _____. | EXCITE |
| 5. Big Ben Down is about a group of _____ who take control of Big Ben. | TERROR |
| 6. We were _____ with the service at the cinema. Everything was terrible. | SATISFY |
| 7. There are always cowboys in a _____. | WEST |
| 8. The film is a big _____. It is boring from beginning to end. | DISAPPOINT |
| 9. A drama is a play in a theatre or on television or radio, or plays and _____ generally. | ACT |
| 10. The film is about two hijackers who _____ to blow up the plane. | THREAT |

Exercise 6. Give the correct form of the words given to complete the sentence.

- | | |
|---|------------------|
| 1. Horror films _____ my younger sister. | TERRIBLE |
| 2. I don't think it is good for young kids to see _____ on TV. | VIOLENT |
| 3. We are going to the cinema to see an _____ film. | AMAZED |
| 4. Although Titanic is a _____ film, it has a sad ending. | ROMANCE |
| 5. He falls in love with a pretty girl. It's a beautiful _____. | ROMANTIC |
| 6. His recent film received a lot of _____ from the public. | CRITIC |
| 7. My favourite _____-fiction films have been from Mars. | SCIENTIST |
| 8. I don't like horror films because they are too _____ for me. | FRIGHT |
| 9. Dracula is the best _____ film I've ever seen. | IMPRESS |
| 10. Do you know Daniel Day-Lewis? He has won three Oscars for Best _____. | ACT |

Exercise 7. Complete the following sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets.

- | | |
|--|--------------------|
| 1. There are many _____ differences between the two communities. | (culture) |
| 2. Streets are decorated with _____ lights and red banners. | (colour) |
| 3. There were lively New Year _____ all over the town. | (celebrate) |
| 4. It is _____ in America to eat turkey on Thanksgiving Day. | (tradition) |
| 5. Vietnam's New Year is _____ according to the Lunar calendar. | (celebrate) |
| 6. What forms of _____ do you participate in during the festival? | (entertain) |
| 7. Her eyes were wide with _____ when she heard the news. | (excite) |
| 8. The Chinese New Year marks the _____ of spring and the start of the Lunar New Year. | (begin) |

Exercise 8. Give the correct form of the words given to complete sentences.

- | | |
|---|-------------------|
| 1. We should use them _____ and try to find out alternative sources of power. | ECONOMY |
| 2. Solar energy is _____, plentiful and clean. | RENEW |
| 3. I think that solar energy can be an _____ source of energy in the near future. | ALTER |
| 4. We should reduce the use of _____ at home. | ELECTRICAL |

5. It's a clean source of energy. Sailboats couldn't move without this_____.
6. Waves will be used as an _____friendly source of energy.
7. Limit car trips by relying on biking, walking, public _____.
8. Solar power can be used to _____or cool our houses.
9. Energy is used to _____a lot of electrical things.
10. There will be a _____of energy in the near future.

POWERFUL

ENVIRONMENT

TRANSPORT

HOT

PRODUCT

SHORT

Exercise 9. Give the correct form of the words given to complete sentences.

1. I don't think so. The solar panels are becoming_____and easy to install.
2. Scientists are looking for clean and _____sources of energy.
3. I know it is also clean and safe to the environment. But does it cost a lot of money to install the_____panels on the roofs?
4. More renewable energy sources will be used to solve the problem of_____.
5. Because our major sources of energy are running out while the solar energy is abundant and_____.
6. _____, fossil fuels are harmful to the environment.
7. Energy is used to produce a lot of_____things.
8. The_____of wind turbines will be completed by next Friday.
9. It can be found in only some places of the earth. It comes from_____inside the earth.
10. _____particles reach the Earth in just 8 minutes.

CHEAP

EFFECT

SUN

POLLUTE

LIMIT

FORTUNATE

ELECTRICAL

INSTALL

DEEP

ENERGY

Exercise 10. Supply the correct form of the word to complete the sentence.

1. We want to buy _____that will save money.
2. These _____will conserve the earth's resources.
3. D. E Huges was the_____of microphone.
4. The price of_____has gone up again.
5. People in the countryside is _____.
6. If it doesn't rain soon, there'll be a great_____of water.
7. Environmental_____is every body's responsibility.
8. Taxi drivers have to have good_____on the street names.
9. In the future, many buildings will be _____by solar energy.
10. My brother can repair electric_____very well.

(product)

(innovate)

(invent)

(electric)

(friend)

(short)

(protect)

(know)

(hot)

(apply)

Exercise 11. The word at the end of each of the following sentences can be used to form a word that fits suitably in the blank.

1. The first symptom of the disease is a very high_____.
2. The long hot summer has led to serious water _____.
3. To have hundreds of_____people sleeping in the streets of a rich city like London is a crime.
4. Average_____for skilled workers are rising.
5. We lived in rented_____before buying this house.
6. Drought has_____many countries in Africa after a long period of dry weather.
7. Nuclear power can be used for _____or military purposes. The government is trying to limit population _____.
9. A megacity is a very large city with big_____.
10. Healthcare workers who offer_____care to others are some of the lowest paid people in the country.

TEMPERATE

SHORT

HOME

EARN

ACCOMMODATE

AFFECT

PEACE

GROW

POPULAR

MEDICINE

8.

1. Supply the correct form of the words in brackets.

1. People in my country are very warm and_____.(FRIEND)
2. An_____is a child whose parents are dead. (ORPHANAGE)
3. L.A Hill is a _____writer. (HUMOR)
4. I'm_____sorry for the delay. (EXTREME)
5. She looks more_____than her sister. (BEAUTY)

6. I am _____ enough to have a lot of friends. **(LUCK)**
 7. They enjoy the _____ summer evenings in the countryside. **(PEACE)**
 8. Those cats look _____. **(LOVE)**
 9. It was _____ of him to offer to pay for us both. **(GENEROUSITY)**
 10. Role-play is _____ in developing communication skills. **(HELP)**
2. Complete the text with the comparative or superlative of the adjectives in brackets.

Who are the __ best __ (0- good) drivers?

Which drivers are the _____ **(1- safe)** on the roads? According to a recent survey, young and inexperienced drivers are the _____ **(2- likely)** to have an accident. _____ **(3- old)** drivers are _____ **(4- careful)**. Gender makes a difference, too. Young men have the _____ **(5- bad)** accident records of all. They are generally _____ **(6- aggressive)** _____ **(7- old)** drivers. They also choose _____ **(8- fast)** cars with _____ **(9- big)** engines.

One of the _____ **(10- interesting)** facts in the survey is that passengers have an effect on the driver. When young male drivers have their friends in the car, their driving becomes _____ **(11- bad)**. When their wife or girlfriend is in the car, however, their driving is _____ **(12- good)**. But the opposite is true for women. Their driving is _____ **(13- dangerous)** when their husband or boyfriend is in the car!

3. Fill in each blank with the appropriate form of the word in brackets.

1. Iceland is considered the most _____ country in the world. **(peace)**
2. A _____ lifestyle has its advantages and disadvantages. **(nomad)**
3. My brother has been a stamp _____ for several years. **(collect)**
4. It is a/ an _____ place to hold a picnic because it is too far from the road. **(convenience)**
5. Drinking water in some areas may be _____. **(safe)**
6. During my stay in the village, I was _____ with several local farmers. **(friend)**
7. Encouraging children to eat and drink _____ is very important. **(health)**
8. Local people in the village often wear their _____ costumer during the festivals. **(tradition)**
9. Please give _____ to that charity to help the homeless after the flood. **(generous)**
10. The baby slept very _____ because the bed was really comfortable. **(sound)**

4. Fill in each blank with the appropriate form of the word in brackets.

1. There is a _____ of books on the shelf. **(collect)**
2. It is very _____ for people in remote areas to get to hospitals. **(convenience)**
3. He is very _____ with his hands. **(skill)**
4. It is said that water collected from the local streams is _____ to drink. **(safe)**
5. We want _____ relations with all countries. **(friend)**
6. I like to eat _____, so I eat a lot of fruits and vegetables every day. **(health)**

5. Use the adjective in brackets in their correct forms of comparison to complete the sentences.

1. Tea is _____ coffee. **(cheap)**
2. The new harvest machine is _____ than the old one. **(effective)**
3. The countryside is _____ the town. **(beautiful)**
4. A tractor is _____ a buffalo. **(powerful)**
5. My sister is _____ me. **(tall)**
6. Blue whales are _____ elephants. **(heavy)**
7. The Mekong River is _____ the Red River. **(long)**
8. Do you think English is _____ French in grammar? **(easy)**
9. My new bed is _____ my old bed. **(comfortable)**
10. The film about my village town is _____ than the book. **(interesting)**

6. Complete the sentences, using the correct form of the words in brackets.

1. Nga eats more _____ than Tung does because she likes fast food. **(healthy)**
2. Viet Nam is a _____ country with different peoples, religions and traditions. **(cultural)**
3. Most of the Central Highlands is _____. **(mountain)**
4. The _____ houses of many ethnic groups are used to worship the ancestors. **(commune)**
5. To become friendlier, you should _____ with your workmates. **(socialisation)**
6. Paul used to be _____ to soft drinks, but now he seldom drinks them. **(addiction)**
7. Like my aunt, I want to become a professional dog _____. **(train)**
8. I am _____ of her hometown with a lot of paddy fields. **(envy)**
9. The cattle are herded to a new pasture by the _____. **(nomadic)**
10. Do villagers today dress _____ as in the past? **(tradition)**

7. Complete the sentences, using the correct form of the words in brackets.

1. Is he _____ to break the customs of her family? **(permission)**
2. Today, we are going to discuss the _____ of traditions. **(necessary)**
3. The offspring will follow the customs without _____. **(oblige)**
4. My dad is the _____ of this wedding anniversary party. **(hostess)**
5. Do you have to follow the traditions _____? **(strict)**
6. Ao dai is one of the _____ items of Vietnam. **(tradition)**
7. She was taught a lot _____ skills by my parents. **(society)**
8. In some ethnic groups, the elderly _____ their next generations to accept the customs. **(obligation)**
9. I have learned several _____ lessons from the folk tales. **(morally)**
10. We were impressed by the _____ of Ha Long Bay. **(beautiful)**

8. Complete these sentences with the correct form of adjectives and adverbs comparison.

1. Mary is **(pretty)** as her sister.
.....
2. A new house is **(expensive)** than an old one.
.....
3. His job is **(important)** than mine.
.....
4. Of the four ties, I like the red one **(well)**.
.....
5. Nobody is **(happy)** than Miss Snow.
.....
6. Today English is the **(international)** of languages.
.....
7. John is much **(strong)** than I thought.
.....
8. Benches are **(comfortable)** than arm- chairs.
.....
9. Bill is **(good)** than you thought.
.....
10. Mr Bush is the **(delightful)** person I have ever known.
.....
11. Dick is the **(careful)** of the three workers.
.....
12. Is the book **(interesting)** than the one you read last week?
.....
13. Gold is **(precious)** than iron.
.....
14. The weather today is **(warm)** than the weather yesterday.
.....
15. This film is not **(good)** as the one we saw last week.
.....
16. Holidays are **(pleasant)** than working days.
.....
17. Which is **(high)** mountain in your country?
.....
18. A house is **(strong)** than a dog.
.....
19. Robert is **(fat)** than his brother.
.....
20. The Pacific is **(large)** ocean in the world.
.....

9. Complete the sentences, using the correct form of the words in brackets.

1. People believe that the _____ water has brought cancer to the local residents. **(pollute)**
2. Light pollution make us _____ to see the stars in the sky. **(able)**
3. Noise is considered as _____ pollution. **(environment)**
4. _____ habitats have been destroyed in recent years. **(nature)**

5. A number of cleaning products contain _____ chemicals. **(harm)**
 6. Water samples collected at these villages were seriously _____ with bacteria. **(contaminate)**
 7. An _____ of agrochemicals is pesticides. **(illustrate)**
 8. Contaminants are usually _____ to aquatic plants. **(poison)**
- 10. Complete the sentences, using the correct form of the words in brackets.**
1. Light pollution make us _____ to see the stars in the sky. **(able)**
 2. Noise is considered as _____ pollution. **(environment)**
 3. The soil becomes _____ because of the use of so many pesticides and fertilizers. **(contaminate)**
 4. _____ waste spills can contaminate groundwater. **(industry)**
 5. _____ habitats have been destroyed in recent years. **(nature)**
 6. A number of cleaning products contain _____ chemicals. **(harm)**
 7. Water samples collected at these villages were seriously _____ with bacteria. **(contaminate)**
 8. People believe that the _____ water has brought cancer to the local residents. **(pollute)**
 9. In many developing countries, water pollution is usually a leading cause of _____. **(die)**
 10. _____ elements have been found in both ground and underground water sources. **(pollute)**
 11. Fish and many other animals are killed by _____ in their habitat. **(pollute)**
 12. Astronomers are concerned about light pollution because they have _____ in viewing activities in the sky and outer space. **(difficult)**
- 11. Complete the sentences, using the correct form of the words in brackets.**
1. _____ Charlie Chaplin was born in London, England. **(legend)**
 2. In Canada, there are a lot of _____ from various countries. **(refuge)**
 3. Lake Wanaka is a _____ scenery in New Zealand. **(spectacle)**
 4. The Sydney Opera House is an _____ monument of Australia. **(icon)**
 5. The _____ originates in Ireland and its associated islands. **(Ireland)**
 6. The Canadians are native _____ of English. **(speak)**
 7. English is an _____ language of France. **(official)**
 8. Thuy _____ loves the koala in Australia. **(absolute)**
 9. The violation of that company was _____ yesterday. **(exposure)**
 10. Do storm water and the atmosphere bring non- point source _____ ? **(pollution)**
- 12. Use the correct form of the words given to complete the sentences.**
1. Robots save workers from performing _____ tasks. **(danger)**
 2. One disadvantage of robots is its high cost of the _____. **(produce)**
 3. Robots are being used in both _____ manufacturing and the _____ field. **(industry - medicine)**
 4. There is no _____ reason why Japan will not be able to make progress in robotics. **(technology)**
 5. The key to YouTube's success is the _____ for anyone from anywhere in the world to broadcast themselves for free. **(able)**
 6. Due to the _____ in the science and technology, impossible things have become possible.
 7. Robots increase worker _____ by preventing accidents since humans are not performing _____ jobs. **(safe - risk)**
 8. As a _____ **(science)**, Professor Tran Dai Nghia set an example as a true _____ **(research)** who devoted himself to the _____ **(science)** career.
 9. Hellen isn't a great _____ of biotechnology. **(admire)**
 10. Paul's uncle has worked as a _____ for twelve years. **(conservation)**
- 13. The word in brackets at the end of each of the following sentences can be used to form a word that fits suitably in the blank.**
1. Children have to moral lessons in school to avoid behavior of _____ in future. **(morality)**
 2. If you don't go to work regularly, you will be punished for _____ in work. **(regularity)**
 3. In our country, men and women are equal. No one supports gender _____. **(equality)**
 4. Every young man undergoing military training is bound to experience _____. **(comfort)**
 5. Tom's failure was due not to _____ but to his own mistakes. **(fortune)**
 6. He is a notorious _____ who robbed a bank yesterday. **(crime)**
 7. It is forbidden to hunt for that kind of bird. It has been listed as one of the _____ species. **(danger)**
 8. The weather was terrible, so we had a very _____ holiday. **(please)**
 9. The _____ of the new guest caused trouble to me. **(arrive)**
 10. _____ to the school is by examination only. **(admit)**
 11. He wanted a divorce because his wife had been _____. **(faith)**
 12. I didn't know who it was- with a mask on, she was completely _____. **(recognize)**
 13. "This is not a good essay" said the lecture. "I find your arguments _____. **(convince)**

14. Traveling in an aero plane for the first time was a _____ experience. (memory)
15. In winter it is important for farmers to provide food and _____ for their animals. (warm)

14. Write the correct form of the words to complete the sentences.

1. He always has a big smile. He is always _____. (cheer)
2. Now she is very tired, because she spent a _____ night. (rest)
3. That old man has a bad memory. He is _____. (forget)
4. He does not care about his actions. He is often _____. (thought)
5. You should throw this pen away. It is _____. (use)
6. The man does not pay attention to mistakes. He is _____. (care)
7. The picture has many colours. It is very _____. (colour)
8. We enjoyed the party. It was very _____. (joy)
9. She did not show any fear. She was _____. (fear)
10. He does not have any friends. He is _____. (friend)

15. Complete the sentences, using the form of the words in brackets.

1. Anna asked me if the astronaut's costumes were made from _____. clothing. (breath)
2. After going through a storm, the plane began shaking _____. (controllable)
3. We definitely cannot live on the planet shown in this photo because it is _____. (water)
4. Mr. Armstrong is working in a _____ space which has no gravity. (weight)
5. The story talked about a _____ who wanted to occupy the spaceship. (terrorism)
6. When astronauts have trouble in outer space, they must act _____. (appropriate)
7. I feel _____ in the chat room because they are discussing a totally strange topic. (visible)
8. Hung has some _____ skills in speaking English with foreigners. (communicate)

1. Give the correct form of the words in capital.

1. Children have to have moral lessons at school to avoid behavior of _____ in the future.

(MORALITY)

2. If you don't go to work regularly, you will be punished for _____ in work. (REGULARITY)
3. In our country, men and women are equal. No one supports sexual _____. (EQUALITY)
4. Every young man undergoing military training is bound to experience _____. (COMFORT)
5. Tom's failure was due not to _____ but to his own mistakes. (FORTUNE)
6. He is a notorious _____ who robbed a bank yesterday. (CRIME)
7. It is forbidden to hunt for that kind of bird. It has been listed as one of the _____ species. (DANGER)
8. The weather was terrible, so we had a very _____ holiday. (PLEASE)
9. The _____ of the new guest caused trouble to me. (ARRIVE)
10. _____ to the school is by examination only. (ADMIT)
11. He wanted a divorce because his wife had been _____. (FAITH)
12. I didn't know who it was- with a mask on, she was completely _____. (RECOGNIZE)
13. "This is not a good essay," said the lecture. "I find your arguments _____. (CONVINCE)
14. Traveling in an aeroplane for the first time was a _____ experience. (MEMORY)
15. In winter it is important for farmers to provide food and _____ for their animals. (WARM)

2. Give the correct form of the words in brackets.

1. I have little _____ of going abroad this year. (EXPECT)
2. Almost everybody is interested in _____. (SWIM)
3. Don't make mistakes in your next _____. (WRITE)
4. Water in an _____ liquid. (ODOUR)
5. The banks in this city are very efficient and give a speedy _____. (SERVE)
6. She always listens _____ to what she is told. (ATTENTION)
7. In his family, he is a _____ child. (TROUBLE)
8. There has been a _____ improvement in her writing. (NOTICE)
9. The price of the house includes many existing _____ and fittings. (FIX)
10. It was _____ of me to mislead you like that. (FORGIVE)
11. They were arguing with each other. They had a strong _____. (AGREEMENT)
12. No one knew what had happened to the film star. Her sudden _____ remains a mystery. (APPEAR)
13. We had not been properly informed. What we have is some _____. (INFORMATION)
14. Was the decision of the judge fair? If not, it was an obvious _____. (JUSTICE)
15. I don't want to bother you by causing you any unnecessary _____. (CONVENIENCE)

3. Give the correct form of the word in capital.

- Ha Noi, _____ the Old Quarter, become a perfect city for walking with handicraft shops, street food, etc. **ESPECIAL**
- Ha Long Bay, which means descending dragon, is the _____ heritage of the world with 1,600 limestone islands. **NATURE**
- Below Sa Pa are _____ rice terraces in the endless valley. **PICTURE**
- Besides the beach, the main _____ in Da Nang is the Museum of Cham Sculpture with the world's largest collection of Cham artefacts. **ATTRACT**
- Hue becomes one of the most _____ destinations for travelers to Viet Nam with the number of three million tourists a year. **POPULARITY**
- Hoi An used to be one of the _____ ports of Southeast Asia, which were used by the Japanese, Portuguese, Dutch, French and Chinese merchants. **BUSY**
- Nha Trang, a _____ coastal city in Central Viet Nam, is generally recognized as Viet Nam's main beach destination. **DELIGHT**
- Formerly known as Saigon, Ho Chi Minh City is a metropolis which is still young but very _____. **DYNAMIST**
- The Mekong Delta is well-known for its busy waterways with many rivers, canals and streams _____ through the region. **FLOW**
- Phu Quoc Island is the _____ place for riding, snorkeling, scuba diving, and relaxing. **IDEA**

4. The word in brackets at the end of each of the following sentences can be used to form a word that fits suitably in the blank.

- They were brought up to behave in a _____ way in public. **(CIVILIZATION)**
- Many people limit their _____ to the sun because their skin burns very easily. **(EXPOSE)**
- Helen was worried about her test, and she didn't sleep well. She was very tired after a _____ night. **(SLEEP)**
- The price of the book is 10 dollar, including _____ and packing. **(POST)**
- How are you getting on with your _____ course in French. **(CORRESPOND)**
- It is _____ for beginning students to make mistakes in English. **(AVOID)**
- The _____ of the trains and buses causes frustration and annoyance. **(FREQUENT)**
- This issue is very _____. Don't discuss it outside the group. **(CONFIDENCE)**
- Do you know what the _____ of the river is? **(DEEP)**
- He was born blind, but despite this _____ he still managed to become one of the top pop singers of his generation. **(ABLE)**

5 The word in brackets at the end of each of the following sentences can be used to form a word that fits suitably in the blank.

- We had the phone _____ because we are moving tomorrow. **(CONNECT)**
- When did the toys come into _____? **(EXIT)**
- He will be able to receive an _____ from a government agency. **(ALLOW)**
- Are there any _____ rivers left in the world? **(POLLUTE)**
- The newly-built cinema shows a _____ of films. **(VARY)**
- Do parents get _____ from their children studies? **(SATISFY)**
- He is very _____ in everything he does. **(SYSTEM)**
- Fruit _____ as it ripens. **(SWEET)**
- My brother lives in a _____ area. **(RESIDE)**
- She is extremely _____ about art. **(KNOWLEDGE)**

6. Complete the passage with the correct form or tense of the words in brackets.

Television first (1) _____ **(appear)** some fifty years ago in the 1950s. Since then, it has (2) _____ **(be)** one of the most popular sources of (3) _____ **(entertain)** for both the old and the young. Television can (4) _____ **(actual)** satisfy almost all kinds of taste. It offers cartoons for children, world news, music and many other programs. If someone is (5) _____ **(interest)** in sports, for example, he can tune in to a sports channel. There he can enjoy a live broadcast of an (6) _____ **(nation)** football match. Television is also a very (7) _____ **(use)** way for companies to advertise their products.

It's not too hard for us (8) _____ **(see)** why there is a TV set in almost every home today. And, engineers are developing (9) _____ **(interact)** TV which allows (10) _____ **(communicate)** between viewers and producers.

7. Use the correct form of the word given to complete each sentence

- English speaking presents special _____ for foreign learners. **(difficult)**
- The school is performing well, but we recognize the need for further _____. **(improve)**
- Let me introduce you a _____ university. I think it's really reliable. **(repute)**

4. We placed _____ in a number of national newspapers. (advertise)
 5. If you want to attend the course, you must pass the _____ examination. (write)
 6. The teaching staff are all well _____. (qualify)
 7. We _____ gather our things and run to the bus stop. (hurry)
 8. I go hill-walking for _____. (relax)
 9. Students will take an _____ at the end of the year. (examine)
 10. The university has an international _____ as a center of excellence. (repute)
- 8. Write the correct form of the words in brackets.**
1. The price of clay, supplies and equipment is a small percentage of the total cost to _____. (product)
 2. He started the youth group to keep local _____ off the streets. (young)
 3. Poem conical hats are believed to come from Tay Ho Village in Hue, which was famous for _____. (skill)
 4. Today, _____ Hang Trong paintings are found only in museums or fine art galleries. (authenticity)
 5. Craft village tourism has also proved an _____, receiving great attention from visitors, especially foreign tourists. (attract)
 6. Mass _____ started in 1989 when the first 340 Windsurf guests arrived. (tour)
 7. The tribe is concerned with the _____ of its culture and traditions. (preserve)
 8. The second collection was more decorative, inspired by _____ and pattern. (embroider)
 9. Vietnamese people have a strong desire to maintain a distinct _____ identity. (culture)
 10. I'd like to thank everyone for helping to make this day _____ for us. (memory)
- 9. Write the correct form of the words in brackets.**
1. Hoi An is known as the centre for very _____ custom-made clothing. (afford)
 2. He was a very _____ and honest man who would never betray anyone. (rely)
 3. Toronto is officially named the most _____ city in Canada. (culture)
 4. The town's most popular _____ is the Marine Science Museum. (attract)
 5. The Province Of Luxemburg is the largest and least _____ of the nine provinces of Belgium. (populate)
 6. The illustration shows examples of _____ dress in the late 1840s. (fashion)
 7. The disease spread quickly among the poor slum _____ of the city. (dwell)
 8. I often think of the _____ time we had all together in Boston last spring. (please)
- 10. Write the correct form of the words in brackets.**
1. Nowadays young people want to leave home as soon as they reach _____. (adult)
 2. A good night's sleep will improve your _____. (concentrate)
 3. Teens should learn to be _____ when making a presentation. (confidence)
 4. Going away to college has made me much more _____. (depend)
 5. A lot of people eat too much when they're _____. (depress)
 6. I have a bad habit of taking on more _____ than I can handle. (responsible)
 7. Students have spoken of their growing _____ with school administrators. (frustrate)
 8. Ann suffered from depression and a number of other _____ problems. (emotion)
 9. Have you thought of talking to a marriage guidance _____? (counsel)
 10. Her networking and _____ skills came in handy for a charity boxing event she hosted. (organize)
- 11. Write the correct form of the words in brackets.**
1. Many people enjoy the pleasures and _____ of living in a city center. (convenient)
 2. Cigarette smoking is _____ for about 90% of deaths from lung cancer. (respond)
 3. He went on to work in film _____ and shared a flat with his father. (produce)
 4. John changed from a friendly and cheerful young boy into a confused _____. (adolescence)
 5. The weather was _____, so we arrived earlier than expected. (favor)
 6. Schools must try to make science more _____ to youngsters. (attract)
 7. She managed to find a job immediately after _____. (graduate)
 8. Parents need to continue to _____ with the child. (empathy)
 9. During the 19th century, Britain became the world's first modern _____ society. (urban)
 10. She got into _____ difficulties after her parents had passed away. (finance)
- 12. Write the correct form of the words in brackets.**
1. As a _____ businessman, he couldn't imagine real poverty. (wealth)
 2. I can never make up stories – I have absolutely no _____. (imagine)
 3. People who are _____ lack the basic reading and writing skills. (literate)
 4. People didn't pay much attention to _____ appearance a decade ago. (physic)

5. Overeating is surely the main cause of _____. (obese)
6. _____ couples do not have the same rights as married couples. (marry)
7. This approach can help identify common _____ and their causes. (behave)
8. She appears to actually like the man, which I find _____. (credible)
9. Today, _____ and loyalty mean nothing in the workplace. (senior)
10. I found the ending of the novel a bit _____. (believe)

13 Write the correct form of the words in brackets.

1. There is a growing _____ that Vietnam creates its own identity with numerous natural wonders. (recognize)
2. We spent years learning about the complex _____ structure of the region. (geology)
3. It was a pretty town with a _____ harbor and well-preserved buildings. (picture)
4. Beijing announced that it would speed up construction of a subsidiary _____ center. (administrate)
5. She had once been a _____ in the Miss World competition. (contest)
6. The snow-capped summit, 2,642 meters high, offers _____ views. (astound)
7. _____ education is compulsory in all English schools. (religion)
8. The rockets are a purely _____ measure against nuclear attack. (defense)
9. Oxford attracts large numbers of _____. (sightsee)
10. A mountain in the Rockies became the _____ for a film about Everest. (locate)

14. Write the correct form of the words in brackets.

1. Although they never get angry, they are not always kind or _____. (tolerate)
2. Local officials have been very _____ on working together for a solution. (cooperate)
3. I tried to tell her about the awful day I'd had, but she wasn't very _____. (sympathy)
4. Students are expected to be quiet and _____ in the classroom. (obey)
5. Boeing sells a third of its aircraft overseas, making it the biggest _____ in the United States. (export)
6. I see people who have opportunities I don't have, and I get _____. (envy)
7. In the past, Hanoians often went to _____ areas by tram, which was a very famous system. (suburb)
8. She has a small office that is used for _____ discussions. (privacy)
9. Some ministers expressed _____ that they could no longer travel first class. (astonish)
10. We were greatly _____ at the news of their safe return. (relief)

15. Write the correct form of the words in brackets.

1. _____ is a state whereby one is unable to read and write. (literate)
2. Show teenagers that you respect their _____ by knocking on their bedroom door. (private)
3. Reality TV has been a very successful form of mass _____. (entertain)
4. The _____ needs to know what rocks the drill has reached. (geology)
5. It's difficult to _____ with a negative people who will do nothing to help themselves. (sympathy)
6. The Eiffel Tower in Paris is an instantly _____ landmark. (recognize)
7. She pretends that she knows all about the latest films and art _____, but it's all a pose. (exhibit)
8. The company produces computers in _____ with a German firm. (cooperate)
9. He is a pleasant child, but often rowdy, _____ and rough with others. (obey)
10. My biggest weakness was my lack of sympathy or _____ for incompetence. (tolerate)

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 20: SENTENCE BUILDING+ REWRITE

- Dùng 1 cấu trúc nào đó trong Tiếng Anh
- Dùng dạng khác của từ
- Chuyển từ chủ động sang bị động
- Chuyển từ câu trực tiếp sang gián tiếp
- Các trường hợp về đảo ngữ...
- Chú ý về thì: câu được viết lại phải cùng thì với câu đã cho.

- Chú ý về ngữ pháp: câu được viết lại phải đúng về ngữ pháp.
- Chú ý về nghĩa của câu sau khi viết phải không đổi so với câu ban đầu.

Phương pháp: sưu tập và làm càng nhiều mẫu câu càng tốt, sau đó đọc đi đọc lại nhiều lần cho thuộc lòng các cấu trúc.

1. It takes sb khoảng thời gian to do sth = sb spend khoảng thời gian doing sth

VD: It took her 3 hours to get to the city centre.

= She spent 3 hours getting to the city centre.

2. Understand = to be aware of

VD: Do you understand the grammar structure?

= Are you aware of the grammar structure?

3. Like = to be interested in = enjoy = keen on

VD: She likes politics

= She is interested in politics

4. Because + clause = because of + N

VD: He can't move because his leg was broken

= He can't move because of his broken leg

5. Although + clause = despite + N = in spite of + N

VD: Although she is old, she can compute very fast

= Despite/ In spite of her old age, she can compute very fast

6. Succeed in doing sth = manage to do sth

VD: We succeeded in digging the Panama canal

= We managed to dig the Panama canal

7. Cấu trúc:too + adj (for sb) to do sth: quá để làm gì

VD: My father is too old to drive.

= It is such a/ an N that: quá đến nỗi mà

VD: She is so beautiful that everybody loves her.

= It is such a beautiful girl that everybody loves her.

Adj/ Adv + enough (for sb) to do sth: đủ để làm gì

VD: This car is safe enough for him to drive

VD: The policeman ran quickly enough to catch the robber

8. Cấu trúc: prefer sb to do sth = would rather sb Vpast sth: thích, muốn ai làm gì

VD: I prefer you (not) to smoke here

= I'd rather you (not) smoked here

9. Prefer doing sth to doing sth: thích làm gì hơn làm gì

Would rather do sth than do sth

VD: She prefers staying at home to going out

= She'd rather stay at home than go out

10. Can = to be able to = to be possible

11. Hardly + had + S + Vpp when S + Vpast: ngay sau khi... thì...

No sooner + had + S + Vpp than S + Vpast

VD: As soon as I left the house, he appeared

= Hardly had I left the house when he appeared

= No sooner had I left the house than he appeared

12. Not.....any more: không còn nữa

No longer + dạng đảo ngữ S no more V

VD: I don't live in the countryside anymore

= No longer do I live in the countryside

= I no more live in the countryside

13. At no time + dạng đảo ngữ: không khi nào, chẳng khi nào

VD: I don't think she loves me

= At no time do I think she loves me

14. To be not worth = there is no point in doing sth: không đáng làm gì

15. To be not worth doing sth = there is no point in doing sth: không đáng, vô ích làm gì

VD: It's not worth making him get up early

= There is no point in making him getting up early

16. It seems that = it appears that = it is likely that = it look as if/
as though: dường như rằng VD: It seems that he will come late
= It appears that/ it is likely he will come late
= He is likely to come late.
= It look as if he will come late
17. Although + clause = Despite + Noun/ gerund
18. S + V + N = S + be + adj
19. S + be + adj = S + V + O
20. S + be accustomed to + Ving = S + be used to + Ving/ N
21. S + often + V = S + be used to + Ving/ N
VD: Nana often cried when she meets with difficulties.
= Nana is used to crying when she meets with difficulties
22. This is the first time + S + have + PII = S+be + not used to + Ving/ N
VD: This is the first time I have seen so many people crying at the end of the movie.
= I was not used to seeing so many people crying at the end of the movie.
23. S + would prefer = S + would rather S + Past subjunctive (lời cầu khẩn)
24. S + like sth/ doing sth better than sth/ doing sth = S + would rather + V + than + V = S + prefer sth/
doing sth to sth/ doing sth...
VD: I prefer going shopping to playing volleyball.
= I would rather go shopping than play volleyball.
26. S + V + O = S + find + it (unreal objective) + adj + to + V
27. It's one's duty to do sth = S + be + supposed to do sth
28. S + be + PII + to + V = S + be + supposed to do sth
29. Imperative verb (mệnh lệnh) = S + should (not) + be + PII
30. Imperative verb (mệnh lệnh) = S + should (not) + do sth
31. S + like sth = S + be + fond of + sth
VD: I like do collecting stamps.
= I'm fond of collecting stamps.
32. I + let + O + do sth = S + allow + S. O + to do Sth
VD: My boss let him be on leave for wedding.
= My boss allow him to be on leave for wedding.
33. S + once + past verb = S + would to + do sth.
34. S + present verb (negative) any more = S + would to + do sth.
35. S + V + because + S + V = S + V + to + infinitive
VD: She studies hard because she wants to pass the final examination.
= She studies hard to pass the final examination.
36. S + V + so that/ in order that+ S + V = S + V + to + infinitive
38. To infinitive or gerund + be + adj = It + be + adj + to + V
39. S + V + and + S + V = S + V + both... and
40. S + V + not only... + but also = S + V + both... and
41. S + V + both... and... = S + V + not only... but also...
VD: He translated fast and correctly.
= He translated not only fast but also correctly.
44. S1+simple present+and+S2+simple futher =If+S1 + simple present + S2 + simple futher.
45. S1+didn't + V1 + Because + S2 + didn't + V2 = If Clause
46. Various facts given = Mệnh đề if thể hiện điều trái ngược thực tế.
47. S1 + V1 + if + S2 + V2(phủ định)= S1 + V1 + Unless + S2 + V2 (khẳng định)
48. S + V + O = S + be + noun + when + adj clause.
49. S + V + O = S + be + noun + where + adj clause.
50. S + V + O = S + be + noun + whom + adj clause.
51. S + V + O = S + be + noun + which + adj clause.
52. S + V + O = S + be + noun + that + adj clause.
56. S + V + if + S + V (phủ định) = S + V + unless + S + V (khẳng định)
57. S + be + scared of sth = S + be + afraid of + sth
58. Let's + V = S + suggest + that + S + present subjunctive
59. In my opinion = S + suggest + that + S + present subjunctive (quan điểm của tôi)
60. S + advise = S + suggest + that + S + present subjunctive
61. Why don't you do sth? = S + suggest + that + S + present subjunctive

62. S + get + sb + to do sth = S + have + sb + do sth
 VD: She gets him to spend more time with her.
 = She have him spend more time with her.
63. S + aks + sb + to do sth = S + have + sb + do sth
 VD: Police asked him to identify the other man in the next room.
 = Police have him identify the other man in the next room.
64. S + request + sb + to do sth = S + have + sb + do sth
 VD: The teacher request students to learn by heart this poem.
 = The teacher have students learn by heart this poem.
65. S + want + sb + to do sth = S + have + sb + do sth
 VD: I want her to lend me
 = I have her lend me.
66. S + V + no + N = S + be + N-less
 VD: She always speaks no care.
 = She is always careless about her words.
67. S + be + adj + that + S + V = S + be + adj + to + V
 VD: Study is necessary that you will get a good life in the future.
 = Study is necessary to get a good life in the future.
68. S + be + adj + prep = S + V + adv
 VD: My students are very good at Mathematics.
 = My students study Mathematics well.
69. S + remember + to do Sth = S + don't forget + to do Sth
 VD: I remember to have a Maths test tomorrow = I don't forget to have a Maths test tomorrow.
70. It + be + adj = What + a + adj + N!
 VD: It was an interesting film.
 = What an interesting film!
71. S + V + adv = How + adj + S + be...
 VD: She washes clothes quickly.
 = How quick she is to wash clothes.
72. S + be + ing-adj = S + be +ed-adj
73. S + V = S + be + ed-adj
74. S + V + Khoảng thời gian = It + take + (sb) + Khoảng thời gian + to + V
 VD: She have learned English for 5 years.
 = It takes her 5 year to learn English.
75. S + be + too + adj + (for s. o) + to + V = S + be + so + adj + that + S + can't + V
 VD: The water is too hot for Peter to drink.
 = The water is so hot that Peter can't drink
76. S + V + too + adv + to + V = S + V + so + adv + that + S + can't + V
77. S + be + so + adj + that + S + V = S + be + not + adj + enough + to + V
78. S + be + too + adj + to + V = S + be + not + adj + enough + to + V
79. S + V + so + adv + that + S + V = It + V + such + (a/ an) + N(s) + that + S + V
 VD: He speaks so soft that we can't hear anything.
 = He does not speak softly.
80. Because + clause = Because of + noun/ gerund
 VD: Because she is absent from school.
 = Because of her absence from school.

I. Rearrange the sentences.

- house/ is/the market/ far/to/from/how/it/Trang's?

- lives/street/ grandparents/he/ Hoang Quoc Viet /his /on/ with.

- many /old / students/ my/have/ doesn't/ class.

- Mrs/ the boy/ to/ who/ Quyen/ talking/ is?

- new / Hoa's/ small/ school/ is.

6. goes/ bus/ Hoang/ day/ work/ Mr./ every/ to/by.
7. new/ from/ one/ is/ house/ his/ how/ different/Minh's/ old?
8. because/ children/ is/ she/Mrs.Diep/misses/ unhappy/ her.

II. Use the given words to make complete sentences.

1. house/ a/ Minh/ lake/ a/ lives/ in/ near.
=>
2. yard/ front/ school/There/ big/ of/ is/ our/ in/ a.
=>
3. many/ right/ the/ museum/ Are/ flowers/ the/ there/ to/ of/?
=>
4. next/ photocopy/ What/ store/ there/ the/ is/ to /?
=>
5. hospital/ father/ in/ the/ city/ 2yiy/ a/ works/ in.
=>
6. there/ family/ many/ in/ are/ How/ Linh's/ people/ ?
=>
7. his/ friend/ in/ family/ My/ Hanoi/ doesn't/ with/ live.
=>
8. brushes/six/gets/her/o'clock/Hoa/at/up/teeth/and.
=>
9. on/ floor/ classroom/ the/ is/ Our/ first.
=>
10. Minh's/ six/ There/ in/ rooms/ house/ are.
=>

III. Write the correct sentences using the cue words.

1. He/ often/ have/ breakfast/ late.
.....
2. You/ do/ the housework/ at the moment?
.....
3. I/ not/ go/ to school/ on weekends.
.....
4. John's girlfriend/ wear/ a red T-shirt/ now.
.....
5. They/ like/ beer or wine?
.....
6. What/ he/ usually/ do/ at night?
.....
7. The teacher/ never/ lose/ his temper.
.....
8. Why/ you/ listen/ to music/ loudly now?
.....

IV. Reorder the words and write the meaning sentences.

1. city / beautiful / a / Ho Chi Minh / is.
.....
2. green fields / there / are.
.....
3. dog / it's / friendly / a.
.....
4. student / Minh / new / a/ is.
.....
5. television / big / a / there's.
.....

6. new / four / there / cars / are.
.....
7. are / two / pizzas / there / big.
.....
8. ten / are / desks / small / there.
.....

V. Write the comparative sentences using the cues.

1. Lan/tall/Hoa
.....
2. This book/ thick/ that book
.....
3. The chair/ short/ the table
.....
4. These boxes/ big/ those boxes
.....
5. Miss Trang/ young/ her sister
.....
6. These buildings/ high/ those buildings
.....
7. The boys/ strong/ the girls
.....
8. I/ old/ my brother
.....

VI. Make questions with *How* and write the answers using suggestion.

1. Nam/ go/ the post office/ bike
.....
2. Nga and Lan/ go school/ school bus
.....
3. your father/ travel/ Ha Noi/ plane
.....
4. the children/ go/ the zoo/ bus
.....
5. you and your friends/ go/ the stadium/ foot
.....
6. Mrs. Lien/ go/ the market/ motorbike
.....

VII. Make question with *How* and write the answers using suggestions.

1. tall/ he?/ one meter and 50 centimeters
.....
2. heavy/ Hoa?/ 40 kilos
.....
3. high/ these buildings?/ over 150 meters
.....
4. long/ your dress?/140 centimeters
.....
5. deep/ the lake?/ about 5 meters
.....
6. wide/ the table?/ 80 centimeters
.....
7. much/ these shoes?/ eighty thousand dong
.....
8. big/ your house?/ about 160 square meters
.....

VIII. Make the correct sentences using suggestions.

1. She/ hope/ that/ Mary/ come/ party/ tonight.
.....
2. I/ finish/ my report/ 2 days.
.....

3. If/ you / not/ study/ hard/,/ you/ not/ pass/ final/ exam.
.....
4. You/ look/ tired, / so/1/ bring/ you/ something/ eat.
.....
5. you/ please/ give/ me/ lift/ station?
.....

VIII. Make meaningful sentences using the following cues.

1. What time / Nga / get / morning?
.....
2. You / can / games / afternoon / but / must / homework / evening.
.....
3. Lan / walk / ride / bike / school?
.....
4. When / it / hot / we / often / go / swim.
.....
5. What / there / front / your house?
.....
6. If / you / not feel / well / should / see / doctor.
.....
7. What color / your baby / eyes?
.....
8. Hoa / learn / languages / bad.
.....

IX. Use the given words to make complete sentences.

1. Linh/ parents/ proud/ him/ because/ he/ always/ get/ good marks.
.....
2. We/ very interested/ play/ soccer/ when/ live/ countryside.
.....
3. I/ not talk/ uncle/ since/ he/ buy/ new house/ city center.
.....
4. The Browns/ buy/ lot/ food/ because/ they/ go/ have/ party.
.....
5. It/ only/ small car/ so/ there/ not/ enough room/ all/ us.
.....

X. Arrange the given words to make the correct sentences.

1. at / tennis / the girls / playing / the moment / are.
.....
2. always / by / John / goes to / car / school.
.....
3. do / in / what / you / the afternoon / do?
.....
4. chatting / the class / are / they / in / now.
.....
5. doesn't / a new car / buy / sister / my.
.....

XI. Rewrite each of the following sentences, beginning with the given words.

1. There / be / small / pond / front / Lam / house.
.....
2. You / can / games / afternoon / but / must / homework / evening.
.....
3. Lan/walk/ride/bike/school?
.....
4. When / it / hot / we / often / go / swim.
.....
5. What/there/front/your house?
.....

6. Where/ your father/ sit/ now?

7. My class/ start/ seven/ morning.

8. I / not often/ swimming/ friends.

12. Make sentences using the words and phrases given.

1. Mr Thanh/ our/ teacher/ Vietnamese

2. There/ two pens/ Hoa's box

3. English/ Lan's favourite subject

4. Where/ Tom/ live?

5. playground/does/a/school/have/your/?

6. school/ you/ your/ do/ like/ new/?

13. Write the full sentences using given words.

1. He/ often/ have/ breakfast/ late.

2. You/ do/ the housework/ at the moment?

3. I/ not/ go/ to school/ on weekends.

4. John's girlfriend/wear/a red T-shirt/now.

5. They/like/beer or wine?

6. What/he/usually/do/at night?

7. The teacher/never/lose/his temper.

8. Why/ you/ listen/ to music/ loudly now?

14. Write these sentences by using the suggested words and phrases.

1. side/ is/ on/ Who/ picture?/ the/ of/ right/ the/ girl/ tall/ the

2. has/ big/ a/ house/ yard./ My

3. because/ can't/ the/I / box/ heavy./ it/ carry/ is

4. warm/ It/ in/ springs./ is

5. slow/ when/ yellow./ turn/ We/ down/ traffic/ must/ light/ the

6. girl./ young/ She/ a/ beautiful/ is

7. The/ looks/ hair./ long/ beautiful/ girl/ with

8. he/ have/ child?/ a/ Does/ lovely

9. a/ is/This/ car./ fast

10. She/ hair/ blonde/ lips./ and/ has/ red

.....
15 Write the meaningful sentences by using the suggested words and phrases.

1. How long / they / be / seaside / last summer holiday?
.....

2. He/be/there/a month.
.....

3. This picture / look / very nice.
.....

4. What / be / the matter / her / last Friday.
.....

5. How far / be / it / your town / Da Lat.
.....

6. That river / be /100 kilometres.
.....

7. What / be / the weather / like / HCM city / today?
.....

8. It/be/very cold/last night.
.....

9. Why/he/not go/school/last week?
.....

10. What / Mrs. White / do / the moment?
.....

16. Write the full sentences using given words.

1. He/ often/ have/ breakfast/ late.
.....

2. You/ do/ the housework/ at the moment?
.....

3. I/ not/ go/to/ school/on weekends.
.....

4. John's girlfriend/ wear/ a red T-shirt/ now.
.....

5. They/ like/ beer or wine?
.....

6. What/ he/ usually/ do/ at night?
.....

7. The teacher/ never/ lose/ his temper.
.....

8. Why/ you/ listen/ to music/ loudly now?
.....

17 Put the words/ phrases below in the correct order.

1. is/comfortable/ the most/ of/ Sunday/ the week./ day
.....

2. best/ is/ the/ album/ This/ Westlife./ of
.....

3. Helen/ beautiful/ is/ the/ most/ know./ I/ girl
.....

4. lives/ He/ farthest./ the
.....

5. Tom Cruise/ most/ the/ of/ actors./ all/ the/ acts/ successfully
.....

18. Make sentences using the words and phrases given.

1. There/ many/ music programmes/ TV/nowadays.
.....

2. Although/ i/like/ sports/ much/ i/ not/ time/ watch/ often.
.....

3. MC/ is/ person/ introduce/ guests/ at the right time/ important events.
.....

4. This programme/ boring/ i/ not/ watch.
.....
5. Mai/ take/ exam/ tomorrow/ she/ not/ watch/ favourite programme.
.....
6. Tom and Jerry/ one/ most/ interesting/ cartoons/of/ children.
.....
7. If/you/want/ know/ weather/like/ tomorrow/ watch/ weather forecast.
.....
8. Nearly all/ households/ American/ have/ least/ one/ TV.
.....
9. Sitcom/ be / programme/ students/ schools.
.....
10. You/ visit/ Universal studios/ they/ make films/ Hollywood.
.....

19. Make sentences using the words and phrases given.

1. Which/ sports/ you/ do /school?
.....
2. Students/ my school/ take part in/ a lot/ outdoor games.
.....
3. I/not/ go / water / because/ I /can't/ swim.
.....
4. Do/ she /do /aerobics/ everyday?
.....
5. Yesterday/ he/ go/ gym /with /me.
.....
6. Last Sunday/I /have/ nice holiday/ some friends/ beach.
.....
7. Who/ favourite/ sports stars?
.....
8. How often/ your brother/ go /run?
.....
9. Sports/ games/ play/ important/ role/ our lives.
.....
10. Mountain/climbing/ consider/ dangerous /sport.
.....

20 Write the correct sentences using the words or phrases given.

1. Nha Trang/ attract/ lots/ tourists/ because/ it/ most beautiful/ beaches/ Viet Nam.
.....
.....
2. Ha Noi/ crowded/ than/ any other cities/ Viet Nam.
.....
.....
3. You/ see/ latest Batman film?
.....
.....
4. I/ be/ Sa Pa/ many times/ with/ family.
.....
.....
5. My mother/ like/ cook/ than/ dance.
.....
.....
6. The Eiffel Tower/ is/ visited/ landmark/ world.
.....
.....
7. I /not/ go/ school/ yesterday/ because/ I/ ill.
.....

-
-
8. Most/people/ Tokyo/ travel/ work/ by train.
-
-
9. Tea/ most/ popular/ drink/ Viet Nam.
-
-
10. Atmosphere/ get/ polluted /because/ there/ more/ smoke /from /factories/ motor engines.
-
-

21 Write the sentences with "will", using the words/ phrases given.

1. Future/human-being/live/Moon.
-
-
2. Vacuum cleaner/ help/ me/ collect/ dust/ small particles/ floors /other surfaces.
-
-
3. We/ believe/ she/ recover/ illness/ soon.
-
-
4. You/ take/ me/ zoo/ this weekend?
-
-
5. I/hope/ Cuong/ come/ party/ tonight.
-
-
6. You/ give/ me/ lift/ station?
-
-
7. You/ look/ tired/ so /I/ bring/ something/ eat.
-
-
8. Future/ human-being/ make/ fresh water/ from /salty water.
-
-
9. You/ think/ people/ travel/ Moon/ someday?
-
-
10. According/ predictions/ lots/ accidents/ happen/ that/ weather.
-
-
11. It/ be /cold/ so/take/ warm coat.
-
-
12. Future/ they/ build/ more/ high-rise buildings/ this area.
-
-
13. Flying car/ run on/ water/ future.
-
-
14. Robots/ help/ us/ look after/ children/ when/ we/ away.
-
-
15. Special cars/ take/ us/ space /easily.
-
-
16. Our /future houses /use/ solar energy/ and/ very/ friendly / environment.

-
-
17. Scientist/ invent/ many/ robots/so that/ they/ do/ housework/ and/protect/ houses.
-
-
18. With/ smart TV/ you/ see/ friends/ other/ countries.
-
-
19. Future house/ solar panels/ roof / be/ desert/ so/I /can/ use/ electricity/ without/paying.
-
-
20. Future/ world/ be /better/ than/now.
-

22. Make sentences using the words and phrases given.

1. Not/ throw/ plastic bags/because/ you/reuse.
-
2. If/ Water/ polluted/ fishes/die.
-
3. If/ you/ turn off/tap/ when/ brush/teeth/you/ save/ water.
-
4. If/ we/ plant/ trees/ air / fresher.
-
5. You/ turn off/ lights/ before/ leave/ room.
-
6. We/ should/ use/ useable bags/ instead of/ plastic bags.
-
7. If/ we/ go/ school/ bus/we /reduce/ air pollution.
-
8. If/ we/use/ pesticides/ indiscriminately/ water pollution/ worse.
-

23. Make sentence using the words and phrases given.

1. Underwater robots/ dive/ longer/ deeper/ than/ human.
-
-
2. Robots/ become/ increasingly/ important/ investigate/ research/ hazardous/ dangerous/ environments.
-
-
3. Military robots/ be/ some/ most/ high-tech/ important/ robots/ used/ today.
-
-
4. Robots/ be able to/ think/ like/ humans.
-
-
5. Future/ robots/ be able to/ do/ more/ complicated/ things/ us.
-
-
6. Nowadays/ robots/ not/ talk/ people/ but/ future/ I/ think/ they/ will.
-
-
7. More/ people/ lose/ jobs/ because/ robots/ replace/.
-
-
8. One/ advantages/ robots/ be/ they/ can/ work/ situations/ dangerous/ harmful/ humans.
-
-
9. Worker robots/ become/ more/ popular/ industries.
-
-

10. Robodex/ be/ largest/ robot/ exhibition/ world.

SENTENCE BUILDING

I. Rearrange the sentences.

1. house/ is/the market/ far/to/from/how/it/Trang's?

.....

2. lives/street/ grandparents/he/ Hoang Quoc Viet /his /on/ with.

.....

3. many /old / students/ my/have/ doesn't/ class.

.....

4. Mrs/ the boy/ to/ who/ Quyen/ talking/ is?

.....

5. new / Hoa's/ small/ school/ is.

.....

6. goes/ bus/ Hoang/ day/ work/ Mr./ every/ to/by.

.....

7. new/ from/ one/ is/ house/ his/ how/ different/Minh's/ old?

.....

8. because/ children/ is/ she/Mrs.Diep/misses/ unhappy/ her.

.....

II. Use the given words to make complete sentences.

1. house/ a/ Minh/ lake/ a/ lives/ in/ near.

=>

2. yard/ front/ school/There/ big/ of/ is/ our/ in/ a.

=>

3. many/ right/ the/ museum/ Are/ flowers/ the/ there/ to/ of/?

=>

4. next/ photocopy/ What/ store/ there/ the/ is/ to /?

=>

5. hospital/ father/ in/ the/ city/ 2yiy/ a/ works/ in.

=>

6. there/ family/ many/ in/ are/ How/ Linh's/ people/ ?

=>

7. his/ friend/ in/ family/ My/ Hanoi/ doesn't/ with/ live.

=>

8. brushes/six/gets/her/o'clock/Hoa/at/up/teeth/and.

=>

9. on/ floor/ classroom/ the/ is/ Our/ first.

=>

10. Minh's/ six/ There/ in/ rooms/ house/ are.

=>

III. Write the correct sentences using the cue words.

1. He/ often/ have/ breakfast/ late.

.....

2. You/ do/ the housework/ at the moment?

.....

3. I/ not/ go/ to school/ on weekends.

.....

4. John's girlfriend/ wear/ a red T-shirt/ now.

.....

5. They/ like/ beer or wine?

.....

6. What/ he/ usually/ do/ at night?

.....

7. The teacher/ never/ lose/ his temper.

.....

8. Why/ you/ listen/ to music/ loudly now?

IV. Reorder the words and write the meaning sentences.

1. city / beautiful / a / Ho Chi Minh / is.

2. green fields / there / are.

3. dog / it's / friendly / a.

4. student / Minh / new / a/ is.

5. television / big / a / there's.

6. new / four / there / cars / are.

7. are / two / pizzas / there / big.

8. ten / are / desks / small / there.

V. Write the comparative sentences using the cues.

1. Lan/tall/Hoa

2. This book/ thick/ that book

3. The chair/ short/ the table

4. These boxes/ big/ those boxes

5. Miss Trang/ young/ her sister

6. These buildings/ high/ those buildings

7. The boys/ strong/ the girls

8. I/ old/ my brother

VI. Make questions with *How* and write the answers using suggestion.

1. Nam/ go/ the post office/ bike

2. Nga and Lan/ go school/ school bus

3. your father/ travel/ Ha Noi/ plane

4. the children/ go/ the zoo/ bus

5. you and your friends/ go/ the stadium/ foot

6. Mrs. Lien/ go/ the market/ motorbike

VII. Make question with *How* and write the answers using suggestions.

1. tall/ he?/ one meter and 50 centimeters

2. heavy/ Hoa?/ 40 kilos

3. high/ these buildings?/ over 150 meters

4. long/ your dress?/140 centimeters

5. deep/ the lake?/ about 5 meters
6. wide/ the table?/ 80 centimeters
7. much/ these shoes?/ eighty thousand dong
8. big/ your house?/ about 160 square meters

VIII. Make the correct sentences using suggestions.

1. She/ hope/ that/ Mary/ come/ party/ tonight.
2. I/ finish/ my report/ 2 days.
3. If/ you / not/ study/ hard/,/ you/ not/ pass/ final/ exam.
4. You/ look/ tired,/ so/1/ bring/ you/ something/ eat.
5. you/ please/ give/ me/ lift/ station?

VIII. Make meaningful sentences using the following cues.

1. What time / Nga / get / morning?
2. You / can / games / afternoon / but / must / homework / evening.
3. Lan / walk / ride / bike / school?
4. When / it / hot / we / often / go / swim.
5. What / there / front / your house?
6. If / you / not feel / well / should / see / doctor.
7. What color / your baby / eyes?
8. Hoa / learn / languages / bad.

IX. Use the given words to make complete sentences.

1. Linh/ parents/ proud/ him/ because/ he/ always/ get/ good marks.
2. We/ very interested/ play/ soccer/ when/ live/ countryside.
3. I/ not talk/ uncle/ since/ he/ buy/ new house/ city center.
4. The Browns/ buy/ lot/ food/ because/ they/ go/ have/ party.
5. It/ only/ small car/ so/ there/ not/ enough room/ all/ us.

X. Arrange the given words to make the correct sentences.

1. at / tennis / the girls / playing / the moment / are.
2. always / by / John / goes to / car / school.
3. do / in / what / you / the afternoon / do?
4. chatting / the class / are / they / in / now.

5. doesn't / a new car / buy / sister / my.
.....

XI. Rewrite each of the following sentences, beginning with the given words.

1. There / be / small / pond / front / Lam / house.
.....
2. You / can / games / afternoon / but / must / homework / evening.
.....
3. Lan/walk/ride/bike/school?
.....
4. When / it / hot / we / often / go / swim.
.....
5. What/there/front/your house?
.....
6. Where/ your father/ sit/ now?
.....
7. My class/ start/ seven/ morning.
.....
8. I / not often/ swimming/ friends.
.....

12. Make sentences using the words and phrases given.

1. Mr Thanh/ our/ teacher/ Vietnamese
.....
2. There/ two pens/ Hoa's box
.....
3. English/ Lan's favourite subject
.....
4. Where/ Tom/ live?
.....
5. playground/does/a/school/have/your/?
.....
6. school/ you/ your/ do/ like/ new/?
.....

13. Write the full sentences using given words.

1. He/ often/ have/ breakfast/ late.
.....
2. You/ do/ the housework/ at the moment?
.....
3. I/ not/ go/ to school/ on weekends.
.....
4. John's girlfriend/wear/a red T-shirt/now.
.....
5. They/like/beer or wine?
.....
6. What/he/usually/do/at night?
.....
7. The teacher/never/lose/his temper.
.....
8. Why/ you/ listen/ to music/ loudly now?
.....

14. Write these sentences by using the suggested words and phrases.

1. side/ is/ on/ Who/ picture?/ the/ of/ right/ the/ girl/ tall/ the
.....
2. has/ big/ a/ house/ yard./ My
.....
3. because/ can't/ the/I / box/ heavy./ it/ carry/ is
.....

4. warm/ It/ in/ springs./ is
5. slow/ when/ yellow./ turn/ We/ down/ traffic/ must/ light/ the
6. girl./ young/ She/ a/ beautiful/ is
7. The/ looks/ hair./ long/ beautiful/ girl/ with
8. he/ have/ child?/ a/ Does/ lovely
9. a/ is/This/ car./ fast
10. She/ hair/ blonde/ lips./ and/ has/ red

15 Write the meaningful sentences by using the suggested words and phrases.

1. How long / they / be / seaside / last summer holiday?
2. He/be/there/a month.
3. This picture / look / very nice.
4. What / be / the matter / her / last Friday.
5. How far / be / it / your town / Da Lat.
6. That river / be /100 kilometres.
7. What / be / the weather / like / HCM city / today?
8. It/be/very cold/last night.
9. Why/he/not go/school/last week?
10. What / Mrs. White / do / the moment?

16. Write the full sentences using given words.

1. He/ often/ have/ breakfast/ late.
2. You/ do/ the housework/ at the moment?
3. I/ not/ go/to/ school/on weekends.
4. John's girlfriend/ wear/ a red T-shirt/ now.
5. They/ like/ beer or wine?
6. What/ he/ usually/ do/ at night?
7. The teacher/ never/ lose/ his temper.
8. Why/ you/ listen/ to music/ loudly now?

17 Put the words/ phrases below in the correct order.

1. is/comfortable/ the most/ of/ Sunday/ the week./ day
2. best/ is/ the/ album/ This/ Westlife./ of

3. Helen/ beautiful/ is/ the/ most/ know./ I/ girl
4. lives/ He/ farthest./ the
5. Tom Cruise/ most/ the/ of/ actors./ all/ the/ acts/ successfully

18. Make sentences using the words and phrases given.

1. There/ many/ music programmes/ TV/nowadays.
2. Although/ i/like/ sports/ much/ i/ not/ time/ watch/ often.
3. MC/ is/ person/ introduce/ guests/ at the right time/ important events.
4. This programme/ boring/ i/ not/ watch.
5. Mai/ take/ exam/ tomorrow/ she/ not/ watch/ favourite programme.
6. Tom and Jerry/ one/ most/ interesting/ cartoons/of/ children.
7. If/you/want/ know/ weather/like/ tomorrow/ watch/ weather forecast.
8. Nearly all/ households/ American/ have/ least/ one/ TV.
9. Sitcom/ be / programme/ students/ schools.
10. You/ visit/ Universal studios/ they/ make films/ Hollywood.

19. Make sentences using the words and phrases given.

1. Which/ sports/ you/ do /school?
2. Students/ my school/ take part in/ a lot/ outdoor games.
3. I/not/ go / water / because/ I /can't/ swim.
4. Do/ she /do /aerobics/ everyday?
5. Yesterday/ he/ go/ gym /with /me.
6. Last Sunday/I /have/ nice holiday/ some friends/ beach.
7. Who/ favourite/ sports stars?
8. How often/ your brother/ go /run?
9. Sports/ games/ play/ important/ role/ our lives.
10. Mountain/climbing/ consider/ dangerous /sport.

20 Write the correct sentences using the words or phrases given.

1. Nha Trang/ attract/ lots/ tourists/ because/ it/ most beautiful/ beaches/ Viet Nam.
2. Ha Noi/ crowded/ than/ any other cities/ Viet Nam.

3. You/ see/ latest Batman film?
.....
.....
4. I/ be/ Sa Pa/ many times/ with/ family.
.....
.....
5. My mother/ like/ cook/ than/ dance.
.....
.....
6. The Eiffel Tower/ is/ visited/ landmark/ world.
.....
.....
7. I /not/ go/ school/ yesterday/ because/ I/ ill.
.....
.....
8. Most/people/ Tokyo/ travel/ work/ by train.
.....
.....
9. Tea/ most/ popular/ drink/ Viet Nam.
.....
.....
10. Atmosphere/ get/ polluted /because/ there/ more/ smoke /from /factories/ motor engines.
.....
.....

21 Write the sentences with "will", using the words/ phrases given.

1. Future/human-being/live/Moon.
.....
.....
2. Vacuum cleaner/ help/ me/ collect/ dust/ small particles/ floors /other surfaces.
.....
.....
3. We/ believe/ she/ recover/ illness/ soon.
.....
.....
4. You/ take/ me/ zoo/ this weekend?
.....
.....
5. I/hope/ Cuong/ come/ party/ tonight.
.....
.....
6. You/ give/ me/ lift/ station?
.....
.....
7. You/ look/ tired/ so /I/ bring/ something/ eat.
.....
.....
8. Future/ human-being/ make/ fresh water/ from /salty water.
.....
.....
9. You/ think/ people/ travel/ Moon/ someday?
.....
.....
10. According/ predictions/ lots/ accidents/ happen/ that/ weather.
.....
.....
11. It/ be /cold/ so/take/ warm coat.
.....
.....

12. Future/ they/ build/ more/ high-rise buildings/ this area.
.....
.....
13. Flying car/ run on/ water/ future.
.....
.....
14. Robots/ help/ us/ look after/ children/ when/ we/ away.
.....
.....
15. Special cars/ take/ us/ space /easily.
.....
.....
16. Our /future houses /use/ solar energy/ and/ very/ friendly / environment.
.....
.....
17. Scientist/ invent/ many/ robots/so that/ they/ do/ housework/ and/protect/ houses.
.....
.....
18. With/ smart TV/ you/ see/ friends/ other/ countries.
.....
.....
19. Future house/ solar panels/ roof / be/ desert/ so/I /can/ use/ electricity/ without/paying.
.....
.....
20. Future/ world/ be /better/ than/now.
.....

22. Make sentences using the words and phrases given.

1. Not/ throw/ plastic bags/because/ you/reuse.
.....
2. If/ Water/ polluted/ fishes/die.
.....
3. If/ you/ turn off/tap/ when/ brush/teeth/you/ save/ water.
.....
4. If/ we/ plant/ trees/ air / fresher.
.....
5. You/ turn off/ lights/ before/ leave/ room.
.....
6. We/ should/ use/ useable bags/ instead of/ plastic bags.
.....
7. If/ we/ go/ school/ bus/we /reduce/ air pollution.
.....
8. If/ we/use/ pesticides/ indiscriminately/ water pollution/ worse.
.....

23. Make sentence using the words and phrases given.

1. Underwater robots/ dive/ longer/ deeper/ than/ human.
.....
.....
2. Robots/ become/ increasingly/ important/ investigate/ research/ hazardous/ dangerous/ environments.
.....
.....
3. Military robots/ be/ some/ most/ high-tech/ important/ robots/ used/ today.
.....
.....
4. Robots/ be able to/ think/ like/ humans.
.....
.....
5. Future/ robots/ be able to/ do/ more/ complicated/ things/ us.
.....

6. Nowadays/ robots/ not/ talk/ people/ but/ future/ I/ think/ they/ will.

7. More/ people/ lose/ jobs/ because/ robots/ replace/.

8. One/ advantages/ robots/ be/ they/ can/ work/ situations/ dangerous/ harmful/ humans.

9. Worker robots/ become/ more/ popular/ industries.

10. Robodex/ be/ largest/ robot/ exhibition/ world.

WRITING

1 Use the words and phrases to write a passage.

1. In/ 1970s, skateboarding suddenly/ become very popular.

2. At first, skateboarders/ move slowly/flat, smooth areas.

3. Then they/ begin/ ride quickly. This/ be called “freestyle” skateboarding.

4. Soon they/ be skateboarding skillfully up ramps/ doing tricks in the air.

5. This/ be called “ramp” skateboarding. Then they/ start skateboarding/ doing tricks/ the street.

6. This/ be “street-style” skateboarding - a combination of freestyle/ ramp.

7. For this, the skateboarders/ need protective clothing/ as knee and elbow pads/ helmets. This/ allow them/ skateboard safely.

8. Today skateboarding is still/ very popular sport, and there/ are lots of competitions.

2.Put the words in the correct order to make meaningful sentences.

1. look / does / she / what / like?

=> _____

2. is / she / as / Mai / easy-going / not / as.

=> _____

3. classroom / to / they / the / outside / the / prefer.

=> _____

4. time / I / most / my / with / spend / of / Hoa

=> _____

5. in / sun / the / rises / East / the

=> _____

6. a / received / Lan / letter / yesterday / her / from / friend.

=> _____

7. not / get / is / she / to / old / married / enough.

=> _____

8. long / is / a / girl / she / with / nice / hair.

=> _____

3.Make up sentences using the words and phrases given.

1. It/ to/ quite simple/ is/ cook Thang Co.

.....

2. to/ do/ you/ like/ in/ live/ the big city /or the countryside?

.....

3. becoming/ is/ the/ better/ traffic.

.....

4. life/ in/ is/ better/ the/ changing/ country.

.....

5. Ho Chi Minh city/ Mr. Hung/ tonight/ arriving/ in/ is.

.....

6. I/ countryside/ the/ last Sunday/ went/ my uncle/ to/ and.

.....

7. is/ home/ so/ dark/ should/ It/ we/ go/ getting

.....

8. grandfather/ Saturday/ I/ my/ am/ on/ visiting.

.....
4. Write full sentences about the Cham ethnic group, using the words and phrases given. Add words if necessary to make sentences meaningful.

1. The Cham ethnic group/ a population/ about 100,000.

2. They/ live mostly/ the coast/ between Ninh Thuan/ Binh Thuan Provinces/ or/ the Cambodian border/ around Chau Doc.

3. The Cham/ a tradition/ wet rice cultivation.

4. Handicrafts/ fairly well-developed/ especially silkworm textiles/ handmade pottery wares.

5. Both men/ women/ wear/ long-piece sarongs/ cloth wrappers.

6. Main colour/ their daily dress/ cotton white.

7. Chief means/ transporting goods/ farm produce/ black-basket.

8. Most important festival/ called *Bon Kate*/ held/ near the Cham towers/ the tenth month/the Lunar year.

5. Complete sentences, using the words and phrases given. You can add some words and make changes.

1. On New Year's Eve, the Vietnamese put fruits/ the altar, and they also arrange watermelon/ traditional cakes/ as *Chung* cakes.

2. While many people/ go to pagodas or churches/ New Year's Day to pray/ the coming year, many others/ remain in their home in/ of the altar/ welcome the ancestors through prayer.

3. Although people from Western countries/ not follow ancestor worship, ancestor worship/ consider a type of religious practices/ some Asian countries.

4. Because *Xoan* singing is still in the memory/ folk artists/ Phu Tho Province, they always/ try their best/ hand down offspring the old style of singing in the activities/ the clubs.

5. The Giong Festival/ held/ the 6th/ the 12th/ the 4th lunar month/ several venues around Ha Noi.

6. The festival/ commemorate/ Saint Giong/ who/ defeat/ the An.

7. It/ also/ an opportunity/ hope for abundant harvests/ happy lives/ and express patriotism.

8. During/ festival/ villagers/ the statue bathing/ processions of bamboo flowers/Soc Temple.

9. The festival/ provide/ many entertaining activities/ including/ folk games/ traditional singing performances.

10. The festival/ recognized/ UNESCO/ as an intangible cultural heritage/ mankind.

6. Complete the sentences about Nha Trang Sea Festival, using the words and phrases given. You can add some words and make changes.

1. Nha Trang Sea Festival/ take place every two years/ a week in around June/ Nha Trang City, Khanh Hoa Province.

2. This/ is a colorful/ dynamic sea festival/ which honors natural beauty/ Nha Trang- the charming city overlooking the sea.

3. The first Nha Trang Sea Festival/ held in 2003 when Nha Trang Beach/ proclaimed as a member/ the Most Beautiful Bays/ the World Club.

4. Coming/ Nha Trang at the time of festival, visitors/ be able to take part/ various cultural/ recreational events.

5. First of all/ be an abundant opening ceremony/ Vietnamese and international art groups.

6. Besides, many interesting activities also/ take place during the festival/ seafood competition/ wine festival/ beach volleyball/ art kite flying festival/ underwater group wedding, etc.

7. The festival/ be also a great chance for tourists/ know more about Viet Nam/ special events.

8. Nha Trang Sea Festival/ definitely give you an unforgettable impression/ Viet Nam's charming beauty as/ as time-honored traditional values.

7. Use the words and phrases to complete the story.

THE STORY OF A TOWN

1. Brighton is/ largest seaside resort/ the south-east of England.

2. At first the town/ be a fishing village and/ not become popular until about 1800.

3. Rich people/ begin to visit Brighton in large numbers/ when King George IV/ decided/ build a house there, it/ become very fashionable.

4. The King/ continue to visit it until 1827, but Queen Victoria/ not like the house.

5. It is open/ the public every day/ there is a special exhibition there/ the summer.

6. Brighton/ offers all kinds/ entertainment, from concerts/ plays in the theatre to local attractions like the Aquarium.

7. The area/ old houses known/ The Lanes is/ very attractive shopping centre,/ visitors can buy souvenirs/ antiques.

8. The houses/ were once lived in by fishermen/ but have now been converted into shops.

9. Not far/ The Lanes is a modern shopping centre/ licensed restaurants and tables outdoors/ you can enjoy/ drink in good weather.

10. Brighton is within easy reach/ London and has been/ popular day out for Londoners/ many years.

8. Complete the sentences, using the words and phrases given. You can add some words and make changes.

1. The major cause/ water pollution/ Vietnam/ be the weakness in industrial wastewater management.

2. Many factories/ use fresh water/ carry away waste/ their plants/ canals, rivers, and lakes.

3. Most/ them/ not have a wastewater treatment system.

4. Industrial waste water/ be directly discharged/ canals, lakes, ponds,/ rivers, causing serious pollution/ surface water.

5. For example,/ 2008,Vedan factory, a sodium glutamate plant, released their untreated industrial wastewater/ the Thi Vai River/ caused tons/ fish and ducks in the river/ die.

6. Another cause/ water pollution in Vietnam/ be the lack/ awareness among citizens.

7. Every day people/ generate a/ of garbage,/ they throw it directly into canals, river,/ ponds.

8. They/ collect water from these sources/ do their laundry, wash dishes, and bathe,/ then they/ throw the dirty water that contain detergent/ shampoo directly into them.

9. Write a paragraph about noise pollution (definition, causes, effects, and solutions), using the cues given.

1. Noise pollution/ any loud sounds/ either harmful or annoying/ humans and animals.

2. Generally/ noise/ produced/ household appliances/ big trucks/ vehicles and motorbikes/ on the road/ planes and helicopters flying over cities/ loud speakers, etc.

3. Noise pollution/ cause/ stress/ illness/ hearing loss/ sleep loss/ lost productivity.

4. Health effects/ noise/ include/ anxiety/ stress/ headaches/ irritability/ nervousness.

5. Noise-producing industries/ airports/ bus terminals/ should/ located/ far/ living places.

6. The officials/ check/ misuse/ loudspeakers/ outdoor parties and discos/ as well as/ public announcement systems.

10. Reorder the words to make the sentences.

1. is/ but/ not/ Canberra/ the/, / is/ Australia/ capital/ of/ Sydney.

2. Maori/ native/ of/ New Zealand/ people/ the/ are/ the/ Island/ in/ North.

3. Washington D.C/ opens/ Museum/ a.m./ at Children's/ in/10.00/National/ The.

4. monument/ San Francisco/ Bridge/ of/ The/ an/ iconic/ Gate/ is/ Golden.

5. its/ years/ language/ for/ considered/ Malaysia/ as/ has/ official/ English.

11. Use the words and phrases to complete the passage.

1. The large movement/ the earth under the water/ causes/ very large and powerful tsunami.
2. That tsunami/ was called the Asian Tsunami in/ most of the world. It/ was called the Boxing Day Tsunami/ England, Australia.
3. South Africa/ Canada because/ it happened/ the holiday/ they call Boxing Day.
4. The tsunami caused/ lot of damage to countries/ such/ the Philippines, Thailand, Indonesia/ Sri Lanka.
5. Waves/ high as 30 meters killed many people/ damaged or destroyed/ lot of buildings/ other property.
6. Over 225,000 people died/ they were/ not found after/ tsunami.
7. The waves travelled/ as far away/ South Africa (8,000 kilometers)/ as many as 8 people/ die because/ high water caused by the waves.
8. Because of how much damage/ was caused/ the number/ people the earthquake affected, over \$7 billion/ was donated/ help the survivors/ rebuild the areas damaged.

12. Use the words or phrases to complete the letter.

Dear Mary,

1. I / have / great time / here in England.
2. I / be / here / three months / my university term / start / two months ago.
3. I / live / dormitory / some foreign students.
4. They / come / different parts / the world.
5. They / be / very friendly and pleasant, / and / their English / much better / mine.
6. I practice / speak English / them / every day.
7. Now / make /good progress.
8. My pronunciation / much better / and / I / understand / almost everything.
9. I / hope / my English / considerably / improve / the end / course.
10. Write / me / soon.

Yours truly,
Mai Lan

13.Reorder the words to make the sentences.

1. her/ is/ phone/ choosing/ tone/ for/ ringback/ a/ to/ Lan / set/ song.
2. her/ She/ in/ kept/ order/ watch/ at/ late/ on/ to/ avoid/ being/ glancing.
3. reading/ board/ at/ Nga/ be/ the/ 8.00/ will/ tomorrow/ message/ a.m.
4. ages/, / hasn't/ their/has/ replied/ Peter/ yet/ received/ he/ but/ email/ for/ it.
5. than/ Snail/ is/ much/ it/ mail/ email/ is / slower/ not/ because/ favoured.

14.Write a paragraph about the topic: "Is television a blessing or a curse?", using the cues given.

IS TELEVISION A BLESSING OR A CURSE?

1. Human beings/ gained much specific advancement recently. There/ be a series of inventions that/ have brought human conveniences/ a modern life.

2. Television/ set as a good example that certainly influences/ our life in communication and entertainment. However, TV also/ cause some bad effects of time-consuming/ health problems.
3. In the first place, television/ help people in the ways of communicating/ each other and entertaining their life. Thanks/ the appearance TV, people can keep/ with up-to-date/ the world.
4. What our/ be if we do not have a TV at home. Because TV is a cheap/ available tool/ provide us daily information.
5. Also, watching TV is a valuable kind of entertainment that/ help people relax after working hard or suffering/ a busy life. Last but not least, TV has changed husband's behavior in connecting/ each other.
6. Beside of good advantages of TV, watching TV may cause some disorders in health/ working time/ well.
7. Some people spend long hours in/ of a TV set, they may neglect then work or duty in taking care/ their family members. And young people may work less effectively/ addicted to watching TV lead to passiveness and laziness.
8. In conclusion, everything/ have two sides and TV is optional. It is obvious that TV/ benefit our life in making people become friendly and close. I totally agree that TV is a great invention and we/ have to be aware/ its good points by using it suitably.

15. Write meaningful sentences about the appearance of aliens based on the words or phrases given, using "may/ might".

1. Aliens/ a hard container/ the brain.
.....
2. They/ two eyes/ a nose/ a mouth/ us.
.....
3. Their eyes/ bug-like/ and/ the nose/ not/ in the middle of the face.
.....
4. Besides teeth/ aliens/ other systems/ eating.
.....
5. They/ two arms/ but/ arms/ suckers/ pick up small objects.
.....
6. Their hand/ only three or four fingers.
.....
7. The number of joints/ greater/ and/ direction of bending/ different.
.....

16. Reorder the words to complete the sentences.

1. Times/ minutes/ Square/ The/ to/ after/ 40/ leaves/ each/ subway.
.....
2. Light/ can/ headaches/ pollution/ make.
.....
3. The/ and/ a/ this/ buried/ five/ early/ trucks/ warehouse/ mudslide/ morning.
.....
4. ;The/ caused/ of/ nuclear/ power/ has/ leakage/ plant/ pollution/ radioactive.
.....
5. The/ are/ being/ the/ by/ team/ aid/ tsunami/ of/ provided/ first/ victims/ rescue.
.....

: REWRITE SENTENCES

I. Complete the second sentence so that it has the same meaning to the first.

1. Does Phong's school have forty classrooms?
→ Are
2. Phuong has a brother, Nam.
→ Phuong is
3. My father usually drives to work.
→ My father usually goes
4. This house is small.
→ It is
5. The bookstore is to the right of the toystore.
→ The toystore

II. Complete the second sentence so that it has the same meaning to the first.

1. Our school has forty-two classrooms.
→ There
2. The bakery is to the left of my house.

- My house
 3. Mr. Minh has a son, Trung.
 → Mr. Minh
 4. Trang is riding her bike to school.
 → Trang is going
 5. Huyen walks to school every afternoon.
 → Huyen goes
 6. Does your class have forty students?
 → Are ?
 7. That motorbike belongs to Mr. Trung.
 → That is
 8. Does your father cycle to work?
 → Does your father get ?
 9. He goes to work at seven fifteen.
 → He goes to work at a
 10. This exercise is very difficult and he can't do it.
 → This exercise is too

III. Complete the second sentence so that it has the same meaning to the first.

1. Whose book is this?
 Who ?
 2. How much is that pen?
 How much does ?
 3. How heavy are you?
 How much ?
 4. Lam is Mrs. Hoa's son
 Mrs. Hoa ?
 5. Mr. Ba is the owner of this house.
 This house ?

IV. Complete the second sentence so that it has the same meaning to the first.

1. Is there a colorful picture in your room?
 Does ?
 2. Peter is best at English in his class.
 Nobody
 3. Let's have a picnic in the park on the weekend.
 Why ?
 4. My house is near the supermarket.
 My house is not
 5. How much are these red notebooks?
 What ?
 6. Many people walk to work for their health.
 Many people go

V. Complete the second sentence so that it has the same meaning to the first.

1. The last time we saw her was on Christmas day.
 We haven't
 2. I haven't eaten this kind of food before.
 This is
 3. It started raining an hour ago.
 It has
 4. We haven't visited my grandfather for two months.
 The last time
 5. I have studied English for three years.
 I began
 6. My brother hasn't seen his best friend for nearly five years.
 It's
 7. When did you start learning English?
 How long
 8. We started living here fifteen years ago.

- We have
9. The last time she visited me was five years ago.
She hasn't
10. I last wrote to my uncle in July.
I haven't
11. It's long time since we became close friend.
We have
12. Minh began to collect stamps in 2000.
Minh has

VI. Complete the second sentence so that it has the same meaning to the first.

1. This is the first time he went abroad.
He hasn't
2. She started driving 1 month ago.
She has
3. We began eating when it started to rain.
We have
4. I last had my hair cut when I left her.
I haven't
5. The last time she kissed me was 5 months ago.
She hasn't
6. It is a long time since we last met.
We haven't
7. When did you have it?
How long
8. This is the first time I had such a delicious meal.
I haven't
9. I haven't seen him for 8 days.
The last
10. I haven't taken a bath since Monday.
It is

VII. Complete the second sentence so that it has the same meaning to the first.

1. Does your class have thirty students?
-Are there..... ?
2. How much does a bowl of noodles cost?
- How much is ?
3. He often walks to school.
- He often goes
4. Mr. Brown has a daughter, Hoa.
- Mr. Brown is
5. What is the length of this river?
- How ?
6. What is the price of this hat?
- How ?
7. What is the price of a cake and an orange?
- How ?
8. That book belongs to Nam.
- That is

VIII. Rewrite sentences.

1. His farm has a lot of vegetables and fruits.
There are
2. There are five rooms in my apartment.
My apartment has
3. My school has 25 classrooms
There are.....
4. I have 10 balls in the goal.
There are.....

IX. Use the conjunctions to connect the sentences.

1. I don't like watching TV much. It hurts my eyes.

2. The newsreader on CNN reads very fast. My sister can hear everything in the news.
3. She loves football. She doesn't like playing football.
4. VTV3 is my favourite channel. VTV1 is my favourite channel.
5. They're listening to music. They can't hear me.
6. You can read Angels and Demons in the library. You can borrow and read it at home.
7. I like travelling. I like climbing.
8. My mother lost the key. She couldn't enter her house.
9. The game show is on VTV3. The science programme is on VTV2.
10. I can't watch the football match. It is on at 2am.

X. Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the sentence before it.

1. My sister swims very well.
2. I like table tennis most.
3. Sports and games play an important role in our lives.
4. We do a lot of indoor activities in summer.
5. Mai is good at basketball.

1. Rewrite each sentence so that it contains the word or words in capitals, and so that the meaning stays the same.

- | | |
|---|---------------|
| 1. Everyone thought the book was written by the princess herself. | HAVE |
| 2. I can't lift this table on my own. | UNLESS |
| 3. I won't stay in this job, not even for double the salary. | IF |
| 4. The coins are believed to have been buried for safe keeping. | IT |
| 5. If you insist on eating so fast, of course you get in indigestion. | WILL |
| 6. It's pity! You aren't going to Ann's party. | WISH |
| 7. Someone punches Sam in the face at a football match. | GOT |
| 8. If you found the missing money, what would you do? | WERE |
| 9. They suspended Jackson for the next two matches. | BANNED |
| 10. Please come this way, and you'll see if Mr. Francis is in. | WILL |

2. By using the words in brackets, join each of the following sentences into logical ones. You may need to change some of the words.

1. A student has studied English for a few years. He may have a vocabulary of thousands of words. (who)

2. Between formal and colloquial English there is unmarked English. It is neither so literary and serious as formal English, nor so casual and free as colloquial English. **(which)**

3. He bought a jeep. His friend advised him against it. **(although)**

4. Good writing requires general and abstract words as well as specific and concrete ones. It is the latter that make writing vivid, real and clear. **(though)**

5. It was raining hard. They could not work in the fields. **(so ... that)**

6. The politician is concerned with successful elections. The statesman is interested in the future of his people. **(whereas)**

7. The results of the experiment were successful. The school refused to give any help. **(although)**

8. He chose to study computer science. Computer science has good employment prospects. **(because of)**

9. Mary walked very slowly. She did not catch the train. **(if)**

10. He is not coming. The meeting will be put off till next week. **(in the event of)**

3. Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given.

1. Where did you find out about Disneyland Resort? **(get)**

=> **Where** _____?

2. When did you get up this morning? **(out of)**

=> **When** _____?

3. I'll look through this leaflet to see what activities are organised at this attraction. **(read)**

=> **I'll** _____.

4. They're going to bring out a guidebook to different beauty spots in Viet Nam. **(publish)**

=> **They're** _____?

5. I'm looking forward to the weekend. **(thinking)**

=> **I'm** _____.

4. Use the words given and other words to complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence.

1. We have never stayed at a worse hotel than this.

This _____ we've ever stayed at.

2. Please continue doing your work and don't let anything interrupt you.

Please _____ and don't let anything interrupt you.

3. I think Da Nang is not so exciting as Ho Chi Minh City.

I think Ho Chi Minh City _____ Da Nang.

4. Our city has five big shopping malls.

There _____ in our city.

5. The Central Tower is the tallest building in this city.

No building in this city _____ the Central Tower.

6. I'll consider it carefully and give you an answer next week.

I'll _____ and give you an answer next week.

5. Rewrite the following sentences using questions words + to-infinitives.

1. They don't know where they should put the sofa.

2. The rules didn't specify who I should speak to in case of an emergency.

3. Huyen My wondered how she could ride the scooter.

4. Let us decide when we should start the project.

5. Could you tell me where I can find a good hotel?

6. We must find out what we are to do next.

7. A good dictionary tells you how you should pronounce the words.

8. They are not sure who they will meet at the entrance.

9. She can't remember when she has to turn off the oven.

10. Does he know what he should look for?

6. Turn the following statements into reported speech.

1. "Don't repeat this mistake!" the instructor warned the sportsman.

→

2. "Leave your address with the secretary" the assistant said to me.

→

3. "Phone me for an answer tomorrow" the manager said to the client.

→

4. "Don't be so silly" Mr. John said to his wife.

→

5. Tom said to the girl "When did you have this picture taken?"

→

6. "Shall we go somewhere for a cup of coffee after class?" Tom said.

→

7. John said to Marry "Why don't you wear your hair a little longer?"

→

8. Ann asked her brother "What are you planning to do tomorrow?"

→

9. She asked her boyfriend "Is it true that your father fought in the last war?"

→

10. He said "I don't understand why she has refused to join us on the trip"

→

7. Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given in bold. Do not change the word given.

1. Charles and his father are exactly alike in appearance.

=> Charles _____ his father.

looks

2. Take all your possessions and walk slowly to the exit.

=> Take everything _____ and walk slowly to the exit.

belongs

3. I'm finding it really enjoyable to work here.

=> I _____ here.

enjoying

4. I take work home regularly because of my new responsibility at work.

=> My new responsibility at work _____ work home regularly.

means

5. In my cycling group there's George, Tom, Harry and me.

=> My _____ George, Tom, Harry and me.

consists

6. In your opinion, who's going to win the Cup?

=> Who do _____ win the Cup?

think

7. I'm seeing how wide the door is.

=> I _____ the door.

measuring

8. Neil always forgets his wife's birthday.

remember

=> Neil _____ his wife's birthday.

9. Its ability to catch fish is the key to the polar bear's survival.

depends

=> The polar bear's _____ to catch fish.

10. What's on your mind at the moment?

thinking

=> What _____ at the moment?

8. Change the following sentences into reported speech

1. "I'll take you to the zoo tomorrow" my mother said to me.

→ _____

2. Jane said to Bill "When do you expect to finish your assignment?"

→ _____

3. The man said to the boy "Can you show me the way to the bank?"

→ _____

4. "Don't be so silly" Mr. John said to his wife.

→ _____

5. "Give a smile" the photographer said to me.

→ _____

6. "Please, help me to make a decision" Ann asked her friend.

→ _____

7. Be a good girl and sit quietly for five minutes" the nurse said to the child.

→ _____

8. My sister said to me "Are you crazy?".

→ _____

9. She asked me "Have you ever seen a flying saucer?".

→ _____

10. James said "Do you want me to send this letter for you".

→ _____

9. Write the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first. Use the word in brackets.

1. No one told me about the change of the plan. **(know)**

2. When I was a child, we lived in Bristol. **(used)**

3. My friend was the winner of the competition. **(won)**

4. Is it a fact that the Romans built this wall? **(did)**

5. She's sorry she can't play the piano. **(wishes)**

6. Our trip to Africa was in October. **(We)**

7. It was breakfast-time when Susan rang. **(I)**

8. There were lights on the spacecraft. **(had)**

9. I had my old coat on. **(wearing)**

10. It isn't true that I made a mistake. **(didn't)**

10. Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it is as similar as possible in meaning to the original sentences. Use the word given and other words as necessary.

1. Did you always eat sweets when you were small?

USE

2. She dreams to spend her vacation in Ho Chi Minh City.

WISHES

3. They didn't use to drink coffee when we lived in America.

NEVER

4. He had a lot of money, but now he doesn't.

USED

5. The boys want to win the football match.

WISH

6. Latin was an international language.

USED

11. Change to the passive voice.

1. People know that he is armed.

→

2. It is believed that the man was killed by terrorists.

→

3. People think that the company is planning a new advertising campaign.

→

4. It was reported that the President had suffered a heart attack.

→

5. It is alleged that the man was driving at 110 miles an hour.

→

6. People know that the expedition reached the South Pole in May.

→

7. It is said that there is a secret tunnel between them.

→

8. People consider that she was the best singer that Australia has ever produced.

→

9. It is expected that the weather will be good tomorrow.

→

10. A lot of people believe that the Prime Minister and his wife have separated.

→

12 Change to the active voice.

1. Progress in science is being made day after day.

→

2. The palace was designed by a French architect.

→

3. The road in front of my house has been paved.

→

4. You can see that the dishes haven't been washed.

→

5. Our salaries will not be increased this year.

→

6. Wasn't that theatre built two years ago?

→

7. The problem may be discussed again.

→

8. My brother has been offered a well-paid job.

→

9. It is reported that the war started again in South America.

→

10. I was told that his football team had played well last season.

→

13. Change these sentences into the passive voice.

1. It is reported that the building has been badly damaged by the fire.

→

2. The Greens had a carpet cleaner clean their carpet.

→

3. People believe that he has special knowledge which may be useful to the police.

→

4. Journalists suppose that the footballer is earning ten million pounds a year.

→

5. It is reported that the damage is extensive.

→

6. People were watching the game outside the stadium on a huge screen.

- _____
7. The south coast continues to attract holidaymakers.
→ _____
8. Somebody has described Keith Jones as the world's greatest guitarist.
→ _____
9. Robert always hated other children teasing him.
→ _____
10. Somebody should have offered Marry a drink when she arrived.
→ _____

14. Rewrite the following sentences using "It +be+adjective + (of/ for+ noun/ pronoun)".

1. The students were unreasonable to complain about the exam results.
→ _____
2. The shelves are simple to put up.
→ _____
3. Hung was confident to present his ideas in front of the committee.
→ _____
4. We were surprised to get the scholarships.
→ _____
5. She was impolite to criticize him in front of his friends.
→ _____
6. Anna was brave to spend the night in the old house alone.
→ _____
7. Such a wonderful performance was interesting to hear.
→ _____
8. You were very kind to give presents to street children before the new school year.
→ _____
9. English is necessary to learn now.
→ _____
10. Our living environment is so important to preserve.
→ _____

15 Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it is as similar as possible in meaning to the original sentences. Use the word given and other words as necessary.

1. Supporting the victims after the disaster was kind of them.
=> _____
2. Valuing the improved living conditions we have today is necessary.
=> _____
3. Crossing the road without looking left and right was stupid of you.
=> _____
4. Going into the lift alone is afraid.
=> _____
5. Following the instructions carefully is important for all of us.
=> _____
6. Being able to build the country into a powerful one is certain.
=> _____
7. Speaking English with the foreigners is confident.
=> _____
8. Showing us the way to train station was kind of them.
=> _____
9. Using a long stick to get some fruits was very clever of him.
=> _____
10. Finding a parking space in the city centre is not easy for you.
=> _____

16. Write complete sentences, using the words/ phrases given in their correct forms. You can add some more necessary words, but you have to use all the words given.

1. The conversation/ take/ place/ the school's 60th anniversary.
=> _____
2. Our grandparents/ use/ live in an extended family.
=> _____
3. Because/ it explain/ a lot about how the school/ in the past.
=> _____

- => _____
4. The roof/ made of tiles/ some tiles were broken./ The window frames/ made of wood/ some of them were missing.
- => _____
5. They/ learn that they/ lucky/ have/ such great learning facilities/ nowadays.
- => _____
6. My mother/ a sympathetic woman./ She always care/ how/ we feel.
- => _____
7. The boys/ willing to do/ what you want/ to./ They/ really obedient.
- => _____
8. Having students/ work/ groups,/ she hoped/ they could learn/ be cooperative.
- => _____
9. She/ tolerant with/ children even when/ they/ misbehave.
- => _____
10. Nowadays/ the nuclear family/ becoming more common/ the cities.
- => _____.

17. Use the words and phrases to complete the sentences.

- The adults/ take responsibility/ leading/ family.
- If/ we/ not have/ forgiveness/ we/ not live/ happy/ extended family/ many members.
- Nguyen Sieu Primary School/ Ha Noi/ introduce/ traditional games/ their curriculum/ recently.
- The school/ like/ offer/ gentle form/ relaxation/ after/ hours/ study.
- The students/fifth grade/play/traditional games/ without/ instruction/ teachers.
- Some students/ enjoying "Cat and Mouse game"/ while/ others/ interested/ play/ blind man's bluff.
- The school authorities/ want/ increase/ students' affection/ school/ so that/ each day/ school/ full/ happiness.
- Family members/ support/ other/ times/ trouble.
- We/ have/ need/ love/ and/ loved/ so/ family/ normally/ place/ where/ love/ expressed.
- It/ certain/ laughter/ positive way/ release tensions/ and/ gain/ close relationships.

18. Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first.

- It's not a good idea to travel during the rush hour.
➔ It's better to avoid _____
- Michael laughed when I told him the joke.
➔ The joke _____
- Don't stop him doing what he wants.
➔ Let _____
- We like to lie on the beach all day.
➔ We enjoy _____
- Do you fancy going for a walk?
➔ Would you like _____
- I wish I hadn't taken your advice.
➔ I regret _____
- Seeing Nelson Mandela will always stay in my memory.
➔ I'll never forget _____
- It was difficult for me to stop laughing at Wendy's letter.
➔ I couldn't help _____
- Shall I phone you this evening?
➔ Do you want _____
- It will be good to see them again.
➔ I'm looking _____

11. I'd prefer not to go out tonight.

➔ I'd rather _____

12. You'd better put your money in the bank, Jack.

➔ I advised _____

13. I can do what I want and you can't stop me.

➔ You can't _____

14. Please don't interrupt me all the time.

➔ Would you mind _____

15. My father said I could use his car.

➔ My father allowed _____

19. Complete the second sentence in each pair so that it has similar meaning to the first sentence, using "you".

1. Vegetarians don't eat meat.

=> If you're a vegetarian, _____

2. People who live in a cold country don't like hot weather.

=> If you live _____

3. Teachers have to work very hard.

=> If you're a teacher, _____

4. People who do a lot of exercise stay fit and healthy.

=> If you _____

5. Mechanics understand engines.

=> If you're a _____

6. People who read newspapers know what's happening in the world.

=> If you _____

20 Complete the second sentence in each pair so that it has similar meaning to the first sentence.

1. Eating healthy foods is very important.

=> It is _____

2. I suggest having spaghetti and pizza tonight.

=> Let's _____

3. You need to peel the onion and slice it.

=> The onion _____

4. Follow these safety instructions or you may get burnt.

=> If you _____

5. My aunt has never tasted sushi before.

=> This is _____

21. Combine two sentences into one, using the connectives from the list: *and, but, because, so, therefore, or, moreover, however, if, when, unless.*

1. You can't borrow my dictionary. You bring it back on Monday.

2. The cost of installation is very high. Solar domestic heating systems are economical to use.

3. Solar panels are placed on the roof of a house. The Sun's energy is used to heat water.

4. I don't agree with a lot of his teaching methods. He is a good teacher.

5. We'd better not waste water. We won't have enough to drink sooner or later.

6. The house is quite beautiful. The cost is not too high.

7. Do you want to study more? Do you want to look for a job?

8. You can go home. You've finished this exercise.

9. I don't get many opportunities to practise my English. I find it difficult to remember everything I study.

10. I'm practising speaking English a lot. I don't want to fail in the oral test.

22 Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means exactly the same as the sentence printed before it.

1. I am terribly sorry, I thought you were a friend of Anna's.
I took.....
2. Although she was busy, she managed to find the time to proofread for me.
Busy
3. I would prefer you do computer science.
I'd rather
4. He didn't get his visa until last Monday.
It was
5. They continued to say that I was to blame.
They persisted
6. Vietnamese coffee is considered to be one of the best in the world.
Vietnamese coffee
7. If you asked me well in advance, I'll be willing to work overtime.
Provided you
8. She listens more sympathetically than anyone else I know.
She is a
9. This is the best essay I have ever written.
Never
10. I assumed that she would learn how to take shorthand after this course.
I took it.....

23. Use the words or phrases given to write meaningful sentences.

1. Tourism development/ lead/ soil erosion/ pollution/ waste.

2. Tourism/ contribute/ increasing carbon footprint/ stress/ ecosystems.

3. The infrastructure/ tourist spot/ not/ satisfy/ great demand/ during/ peak season.

4. Tourists/ cause/ significant effect/ local habitats/ especially/ country.

5. Tourists/ be aware/ damage/ they/ cause/ and/ tourism authorities/ take measures/ solve/ problems.

6. First/ tourism/ create/ jobs/ tourism industry/ and/ other sectors/ such/ retail and transportation.

7. However/ jobs/ created/ tourism/ often seasonal/ and/ poorly paid.

8. Second/ tourism/ encourage/ preservation/ traditional customs/ handicrafts/ festivals/ but/ interaction/ tourists/ also lead/ erosion/ traditional cultures/ values.

9. Finally/ ecotourism/ help/ conservation/ wildlife/ generating funds/ maintaining national park.

10. Nevertheless/ it/ also cause/ pollution/ through traffic emissions/ littering/ noise.

24 Rewrite each sentence so that it contains the word or words in capitals, and so that the meaning stays the same.

1. Scuba-diving is not really my cup of tea. **INTERESTED**
I _____ scuba-diving.

2. No mountains in Western Europe are higher than Mount Blanc. **THE**
Mount Blanc _____ Western Europe.
3. They require special permits to access Son Doong Cave. **TO**
Special permits _____ Son Doong Cave.
4. Jane hasn't decided where to go on holiday. **MIND**
Jane hasn't _____ about where to go on holiday.
5. We don't like travelling during peak season. **INTO**
We _____ during peak season.

25. By using the words in brackets, join each of the following sentences into logical ones. You may need to change some of the words.

1. An area of low pressure forms over the land. The heated air expands and rises. **(as a result)**

2. Canada is similar to the United States. The majority of its people speak English. **(in that)**

3. Governments will most probably not relocate entire cities. They are in earthquake zones. **(just because)**

4. They were forced to buy expensive ones. There were no economy seats available. **(so)**

5. The hypothesis could be tested. Two experiments were conducted. **(so that)**

6. Middle-class families tend to have person-centered structures. Working-class families are usually positional. **(whereas)**

7. Middle-class children do well in most education systems. Working-class children do relatively poorly. **(on the other hand)**

8. Western Europe has large reserves of fuel. The UK has a 250-year supply of coal. **(for instance)**

9. A duck can swim easily and walk on soft ground. It has webbed feet. **(so that)**

10. Far fewer people are killed or injured during train travel. Rail travel is safer than road travel. **(because)**

26. Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means exactly the same as the sentence printed before it.

1. They recruited very few young engineers.
Hardly _____
2. Only two out of the five rooms we have booked have air conditioning.
We have booked five rooms, only _____
3. Jane seems to come to the performance late.
It looks _____
4. I could hold a big party due to Mom's help.
Had it _____
5. Success depends on hard work.
The harder _____
6. Fiona was so disappointed that she could not keep on working.
Such _____
7. Although Richard is competent in his work, he does not know how to deal with this client.
Competent _____
8. It was wrong of you to allow a four-year-old child to walk home alone.
You should _____
9. I could realize how important the family is only after I left home.
Not until _____
10. Mrs. Green is proud of her son's contribution to the play.
Mrs. Green is proud of what _____

27 Make the following using relative clauses.

1. Alice is my friend. Alice's mother died last year.
2. The boy will be punished. He threw that stone.
3. Ann is very friendly. She lives next door.
4. The man is a famous actor. You met him at the party last night.
5. There are some words. They are very difficult to translate.
6. I was looking for a book this morning. I've found it now.
7. Is that the car? You want to buy it.
8. Sandra works in advertising. You were talking to her.
9. The little girl ate sweets the whole way. She sat next to me on the coach.
10. Lan is a journalist. Her tape recorder was stolen.

28 Rewrite the sentences below as single sentence using relative clauses.

1. I don't know the name of the woman. I spoke to her on the phone.
→ _____
2. We often go to visit our friends in Bristol. It's only 30 miles away.
→ _____
3. This is Mr Carter. I was telling you about him.
→ _____
4. That is the room. The meeting is held in that room.
→ _____
5. I'll always remember the day. I first saw that sight on that day.
→ _____
6. She was born in Malaysia. Rubber trees grow well there.
→ _____
7. No one knows the school. My uncle taught at that school 10 years ago.
→ _____
8. Please ask them the time. The train started the trip at that time.
→ _____
9. New Year's Day is a day. All family members gather and enjoy a family dinner then.
→ _____
10. There are many hotels. Tourists can enjoy their holidays there.
→ _____

29. Rewrite the sentences using the conditional type 2.

1. Keep silent or you'll wake the baby up.
→ _____
2. Stop talking or you won't understand the lesson.
→ _____
3. I don't know her number, so I don't ring her up.
→ _____
4. I don't know the answer, so I can't tell you.
→ _____
5. We will get lost because we don't have a map.
→ _____

30. Rewrite the following sentence using a relative clause.

1. India is a country. The earthquake occurred in this country last month.
→ _____
2. Bac Giang is a city. I was born and grew up there.
→ _____
3. We have not decided the day. We'll go to London on that day.
→ _____
4. The man made me sad the most. I love him with all my heart.
→ _____
5. The thief was caught. This was really good news.
→ _____
6. The gentleman was very young. He was introduced as the most successful businessman.
→ _____
7. His book became the best seller. It was published last year.
→ _____

- _____
8. Neil Armstrong lived in the USA. He walked on the moon.
→ _____
9. Nam is very intelligent. He learns in our class.
→ _____
10. Ha Long has grown into a big city over the past few years. I visited the city last year.
→ _____

31 Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it is as similar as possible in meaning to the original sentences. Use the word given and other words as necessary.

1. The class watched a film yesterday. The film was about the Apollo 13 space mission.
➔ The film _____
2. We are meeting an astronomer tonight. This astronomer has discovered three Earth-like planets.
➔ The astronomer _____
3. We read about an astronaut. The astronaut travelled into space in 1961.
➔ We read about _____
4. Dennis Tito became the first space tourist in 2001. Anousheh Ansari travelled into space as a tourist in 2006.
➔ When Anousheh Ansari _____
5. This is the man. He works for NASA.
➔ The is the _____
6. I'm reading an article. The article is about NASA's plans to return humans to the moon.
➔ I'm reading _____

32. Rewriting the following sentences using a relative pronoun.

1. This is the astronaut. He visited our school last week.
=> _____
2. This is the village. Helen Sharman, the first British astronaut, was born there.
=> _____
3. Can you talk more about the parabolic flights. You took them for your training?
=> _____
4. This is the museum. It has some of the best rock collections in the country.
=> _____
5. We'll explore inland Sweden and visit the summer house. Carin and Ola have built it themselves.
=> _____
6. This is the year. The first human walked on the moon on that day.
=> _____

33. Write complete sentences, using the words/ phrases given in their correct forms. You can add some more necessary words, but you have to use all the words given.

1. Pham Tuan/ Viet Nam's/ astronaut, and Christer Fuglesang/ Sweden's first astronaut.
=> _____
2. He found/ Earth didn't look/ big as he thought, no boundaries/ Earth could be seen from/ we should cooperate/ take care of it.
=> _____
3. It seemed/ he/ not enjoy it much/ since/ wasn't fresh.
=> _____
4. They talked/ him when he/ in space/ that made him happy.
=> _____
5. They think/ the chance/ fly to space/ equal for everyone.
=> _____
6. He/ think teamwork, social skills/ foreign languages/ important/ an astronaut.
=> _____

34. Complete the second sentence in each pair so that it has similar meaning to the first sentence.

1. The team plays on the left. The team has never won the championship.
=> The team _____

2. Neil Armstrong and Buzz Aldrin planted an American flag on the moon. They spoke to President Richard Nixon after that.

=> Before Neil Armstrong and Buzz Aldrin _____

3. This article describes a ground-breaking space mission to land on a comet. The mission is called Rosetta.

=> The ground-breaking space mission _____

4. Last week they visited a museum. The first artificial satellite is on display there.

=> Last week they _____

5. The Rosetta mission has a task. The task is comparable to a fly trying to land on a speeding bullet.

=> The task _____

35. Write complete sentences, using the words/ phrases given in their correct forms. You can add some more necessary words, but you have to use all the words given.

1. Nhat Nam/ crazy / space.

=> _____

2. He/ learnt about the universe/ had collected/ of books about space.

=> _____

3. To show that there/ more things/ the list but that it's not necessary/ list everything.

=> _____

4. He/ be not/ impressed/ because/ he thought the meteorite/ like an ordinary piece of rock.

=> _____

5. He/ compare it/ a ride/ a rollercoaster.

=> _____

36. Rewrite the following sentences using relative clauses.

1. A friend of mine helped me to get a job. His father is the manager of a company.

→ _____

2. Mike gave half of the £50,000 he won to his parents.

→ _____

3. London was once the largest city in the world, but the population is now falling.

→ _____

4. A number of suggestions were made at the meeting, but most of them were not very practical.

→ _____

5. It is a medieval palace. The king hid in its tower during the civil war.

→ _____

6. I couldn't remember the number of my own car. This made the police suspicious.

→ _____

7. You sent me a present. Thank you very much for it.

→ _____

8. Dr Andy Todd is head of Downlands Hospital. He has criticized government plans to cut health funding.

→ _____

9. They are choosing the boys for the school's football team. All of them are under 9.

→ _____

10. I went to see my nephew Jimmy. I used to look after him when he was small.

→ _____

37. Use a relative pronoun to combine each pair of sentences. Put in the commas where necessary.

1. Ann is very friendly. She lives next door.

2. The man is a famous actor. You met him at the party last night.

3. There are some words. They are very difficult to translate.

4. The sun provides us with heat and light. It is one of millions of stars in the universe.

5. Students will be punished. Their homework is late.

6. I was looking for a book this morning. I've found it now.

7. Is that the car? You want to buy it.

8. Sandra works in advertising. You were talking to her.

9. Lake Prespa is a lonely beautiful lake. It's on the north Greek border.

10. The little girl ate sweets the whole way. She sat next to me on the coach.

38. Write the information in brackets as a relative clause (defining or non-defining) in an appropriate place in the sentence.

1. Julia's father has just come back from a skiing holiday. (he is over 80)
→ _____
2. The problems faced by the company are being resolved. (I'll look at these in detail in a moment.)
→ _____
3. She was greatly influenced by her father. (she adored him)
→ _____
4. Parents are being asked to take part in the survey. (their children are between four or six)
→ _____
5. He isn't looking forward to the time. (he will have to leave at that time)
→ _____
6. The Roman coins are now on display in the National Museum. (a local farmer came across them in a field)
→ _____
7. He pointed to the stairs. (they led down to the cellar)
→ _____
8. These drugs have been withdrawn from sale. (they are used to treat stomach ulcers)
→ _____
9. The singer had to cancel her concert. (she was recovering from flu)
→ _____
10. We went to the Riverside Restaurant. (I once had lunch with Henry there)
→ _____
11. My aunt is now a manager of a department store. (her first job was filling shelves in a supermarket).
→ _____
12. John Graham's latest film is his first for more than five years. (the film is set in the north of Australia)
→ _____
13. The newspaper is owned by the Mears group. (its chairperson is Sir James Bex)
→ _____
14. The Master's course is no longer taught. (I took this course in 1990)
→ _____
15. The minister talked about the plans for tax reform. (he will reveal them next month)
→ _____

39. Use a relative pronoun to combine each pair of sentences. Put in the commas where necessary.

1. Is Zedco a company? It was taken over last year.

2. Felix Reeve is a journalist. His tape recorder was stolen.

3. This famous picture is worth thousands of pounds. It was damaged during the war.

4. I don't know the name of the woman. I spoke to her on the phone.

5. We often go to visit our friends in Bristol. It is only 30 miles away.

6. This is Mr. Carter. I was telling you about him.

7. They've captured all the animals. They escaped from the zoo.

8. A scientist has won the Nobel Prize. He discovered a new planet.

9. The river is the Wye. It flows through Hereford.

10. We climbed to the top of the tower. We had a beautiful view from there.

40. Join each pair of sentences into one, beginning with the words provided.

1. Although he is wealthy, he is not spoiled. **(Despite)**

2. Despite a good salary, he was unhappy in his job. **(Though)**

3. In spite of the high prices, my roommates go to the movies every Saturday. **(Although)**

4. Even though she had a poor memory, she told interesting stories to the children. **(Despite)**

5. In spite of their poverty, they are very generous. **(Although)**

6. Though she has been absent frequently, he has managed to pass the test. **(In spite of)**

7. In spite of Lee's Sadness at losing the contest, she managed to smile. **(Although)**

8. My friend ate the chocolate cake even though she was on a diet. **(Despite)**

9. In spite of a headache, he enjoyed the film. **(Although)**

10. My sister will take a plane even though she dislikes flying. **(In spite of)**

41

1. Hung was seriously advised by his teacher, but he insisted on disturbing the class.

→ In spite

2. Miss Diep tried several times, but she couldn't find a taxi.

→ Despite

3. Although he felt tired, he stayed up to keep us company.

→ In spite

4. Mr. Vinh would like more holidays. He doesn't mind going to school.

→ Despite

5. The work was hard and the wages were low. He decided to the job.

→ In spite

6. They didn't have much time, however they came to visit us.

→ Despite

7. He is too old, but he still does his gymnastics every morning.

→ In spite

8. Trang Anh is the boss. She works as hard as her employees.

→ Despite

9. He has health problems. He is always smiling.

→ In spite

10. Kieu Anh got good marks. The exam was difficult.

→ Despite

42 Write complete sentences, using the words/ phrases given in their correct forms. You can add some more necessary words, but you have to use all the words given.

1. He/ not promoted/ spite of/ efforts.

=>

2. The boss/ denied/ bully/ new employee.

=>

3. Students/ need/ vocational skills/ before they enter/ world of work.

=>

4. She/ a dynamic businesswoman. /She/ so/ energy and focus.

=>

5. He/ such/ empathetic nurse/ the patients/ love him.

- => _____
6. I feel/ we have too/ academic subjects/ not enough time/ physical education.
=> _____
7. As/ opera singer, / he has/ opportunities perform/ Grand Theatre.
=> _____
8. Work/ as architects, / they design/ build.
=> _____
9. They/ won/ big contracts./ They/ successful businesswomen / businessmen.
=> _____
10. Work/ skilled craftsmen/ craftswomen,/ I learnt/ lot about/ art form.
=> _____

43

1. Mr Thuan was injured. He managed to finish the race.
➔ Despite _____
2. Although he had no qualifications for it, he got the job.
➔ In spite _____
3. I didn't like the CD you have recommended me, but I bought it all the same.
➔ Although _____
4. Thuy went to school. She was ill.
➔ In spite _____
5. We couldn't win the match. We played well.
➔ Despite _____
6. It rained a lot. We enjoyed our holiday.
➔ In spite _____
7. I told her all the truth. However she didn't believe me.
➔ In spite _____
8. They didn't play well, but they won the game.
➔ Despite _____
9. He didn't get the job. He had all the necessary qualifications.
➔ In spite _____
10. Although the shirts are very expensive, people buy them because they are trendy.
➔ In spite _____

44.

1. The boy finally managed/ deal/ his peers/ the vocational school.
=> _____
2. She attempted/ cooperate/ the others/ team/ finish the work.
=> _____
3. He has a talent/ fixing things,/ he/ an excellent mechanic.
=> _____
4. My father/ running/ pharmacy./ He/ pharmacist.
=> _____
5. He wants/ become/ fashion designer./ He/ very interested/ fashion and design.
=> _____
6. I took/ account the pay/ the working conditions/ before I decided/ take the job.
=> _____
7. He/ become/ professional footballer/ the local football team.
=> _____
8. He/ burnt the midnight oil/ a long time so it's fair if he gets an A/ his final exam.
=> _____
9. He a professional singer/ his beautiful voice, he/ make a bundle.
=> _____
10. She dreams/ becoming/ physicist/ she really likes physics.
=> _____

45. Rewrite the following sentences using a relative clause.

1. Rod Lee has won an Oscar. I know his sister.

2. Is this the style of hair? Your wife wants to have it.

3. A man answered the phone. He said Tom was out.

4. 7.05 is the time. My plane arrives then.

5. Max isn't home yet. That worries me.

6. Do you know the building? The windows of the building are painted green.

7. Last week I went to see the house. I used to live in it.

8. I don't know the girl's name. She's just gone into the hall.

9. Be sure to follow the instructions. They are given at the top of the page.

10. Hoan Kiem Lake is a historical place. Its water is always blue.

1. Rewrite the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first one

1. My house is smaller than your house.
→ Your house.....
2. I love listening to music.
→ I like.....
3. The black dress is more expensive than the white one.
→ The white dress.....
4. No one in my group is more intelligent than Mary.
→ Mary.....

KEY 1

1. Your house is bigger than my house.
2. I like listening to music.
3. The white dress is not as expensive as the black one.
Or The white dress is cheaper than the black one.
4. Mary is the most intelligent in my group.

2. Complete the following sentences with an appropriate form of the word in brackets.

1. There are four in my house. **bookshelf**
2. The photocopy is between the and the drugstore. **bake**
3. Is your brother an? **act**
4. Mai's sister is a **sing**
5. We must be when we cross the road. **care**
6. This tree has a lot of green **leaf**
7. Is your father a? **business**
8. I'm Vietnamese. What's your? **nation**
9. Air is a big problem in many cities in the world. **pollute**
10. Yoko is from Japan. She is **Japan**

KEY 2

1. bookselves 2. bakery 3. actor 4. singer 5. careful
6. leaves 7. businessman 8. nationality 9. pollution 10. Japanese

3. Rewrite each sentence so it has the same meaning. Use a comparative form of the adjective in brackets.

1. Tim is older than Sarah. **(young)**
Sarah
2. Our house is larger than yours. **(small)**
Your house is
3. Bill is not as tall as David. **(short)**
Bill is
4. Jack's marks are worse than mine. **(good)**
My marks
5. This book is the same price as that one. **(expensive)**
That book is
6. Your bike is slower than mine. **(fast)**

My bike

4. Rewrite the sentences of comparison.

1. Her old house is bigger than her new one.
→ Her new house
2. No one in my class is taller than Peter.
→ Peter
3. The black dress is more expensive than the white one.
→ The white dress
4. According to me, English is easier than Maths.
→ According to me, Maths
5. No one in my group is more intelligent than Mary.
→ Mary
6. No river in the world is longer than the Nile.
→ The Nile
7. Mount Everest is the highest mountain in the world.
→ No mountain
8. This is the first time I have ever met such a pretty girl,
→ She is
9. He works much. He feels tired.
→ The more
10. This computer works better than that one.
→ That computer
11. The apartment is big. The rent is high.
→ The bigger
12. We set off soon. We will arrive soon.
→ The sooner
13. The joke is good. The laughter is loud.
→ The better
14. She gets fat. She feels tired.
→ The fatter
15. As he gets older, he wants to travel less.
→ The older
16. The children are excited with the difficult games.
→ The more
17. People dive fast. Many accidents happen.
→ The faster
18. I meet him much. I hate him much.
→ The more
19. My boss works better when he is pressed for time.
→ The less
20. As he has much money, he wants to spend much.
→ The more

5. Rewrite the sentences, using the given words.

1. Yesterday the temperature was nine degrees. Today it's only six degrees.
=> It's
2. The journey takes four hours by car and five hours by train.
=> It takes
3. We were very busy at work today. We are not as busy as that every day.
=> We
4. Jane cooks better than her sister.
=> Jane's sister
5. Tom is the best football player in this team.
=> Nobody in this team

6. Complete the sentences, using the correct form of the words in brackets.

1. Your work is better than mine.
→ My work
2. Dick is the youngest in the family.
→ Nobody

3. I lose the key, so I cannot get into the house.
→ If _____
4. They are too young to join the army.
→ They are not _____
5. She won't come unless you invite her
→ If _____
6. We can't hang the picture on the wall. It is heavy.
→ The picture _____
7. They were tired. They were hungry.
→ They were not only _____
8. They finish their work. They went home.
→ Finishing _____
9. She goes out in the rain. She gets wet.
→ If _____
10. Tom can't lift the table. He isn't strong enough.
→ Tom is _____

7. Rewrite the sentence that has the same meaning with the previous sentence.

1. I fed the chickens this morning.
→ The chickens
2. The question is so difficult that all the students can't answer it.
→ It is such
3. It is 5 years since Tom and Mary got married.
→ Tom and Mary
4. The film was so boring that I fell asleep.
→ Because
5. Although the weather was bad, it did not delay the traffic.
→ In spite of
6. They built a new bridge over the river.
→ A new bridge
7. You feel unhealthy because you don't take any exercise.
→ If you
8. I last wrote to my pen-pal two months ago.
→ I haven't
9. Although he is strong, he can't move that stone.
→ In spite
10. Where does your brother work?" she asked me.
→ She asked me

8. Rewrite and complete the sentences using "should".

Ex: If I were you, I'd go to the doctor's.

→ I think **you should go to the doctor's.**

1. It's a good idea to wear a warm coat.
You
2. My advice is to leave early.
I think you
3. It's a good idea to take more exercise.
You
4. In my opinion, it's a good idea for you to read a lot.
I think
5. It's a good idea to do that.
You
6. My advice is for you to ride a bike.
I think
7. If I were you, I would buy a dog.
I think

9. Rewrite the sentences using "should/ shouldn't".

1. Don't touch this switch.
→ This switch
2. It isn't a good idea for you to put so much salt in the soup.
→ You shouldn't

3. It isn't a good idea for you to drink so much alcohol.
→ You shouldn't
4. Don't trip over the step into the kitchen.
→ You shouldn't
5. You can't park here because it's a restricted area.
→ You shouldn't
6. Why didn't they tell me about these changes earlier?
→ I should have been
7. Don't lean against the newly-painted wall.
→ You shouldn't
8. Don't smoke too many cigarettes.
→ You shouldn't
9. Children are advised to go to bed early.
→ Children should.....
10. You had better not to stay up late.
→ You shouldn't

10. Combine each pair of sentences to make one sentence, using the words given in brackets.

1. Lang Lieu couldn't buy any special food. He was very poor. **(because)**
.....
2. During Tet, Vietnamese people buy all kinds of sweets. They make Chung cakes as well. **(so)**
.....
3. The Hung King Temple Festival was a local festival. It has become a public holiday in Viet Nam since 2007. **(however)**
.....
.....
4. At the Mid-Autumn Festival, kids can sing, dance, and enjoy mooncakes. Every child likes it very much. **(therefore)**
.....
.....
5. The water is highly polluted. We cannot swim in this part of the river. **(because)**
.....
6. Mr. Minh is admired. He dedicates all his life to protecting environment. **(since)**
.....
7. Give me a ring. You'll hear some news. **(when)**
.....
8. The TV program will end. I'll do my homework. **(after)**
.....
9. I'll go to work. I'll have a bath. **(before)**
.....
10. She'll in Paris. She'll visit friends. **(while)**
.....

11. Combine the sentences to complete the sentences, using the words in brackets.

1. The building is very old. He lives there. **(where)**
.....
2. I will tell you something. You didn't know it before. **(which)**
.....
3. I'll never forget the day. I met you then. **(when)**
.....
4. It was cold. However, Tom still went swimming. **(although)**
.....
5. John is very sad. He fails the final exam. **(because)**
.....
6. He never left the house. He had been born there. **(where)**
.....
7. I met the man. He works in a bank. **(who)**
.....
8. Here are the letters. They arrived this morning. **(which)**
.....

9. My grandfather is very old. He is still young at heart. **(although)**

10. Tom gets a lot of money. He works hard. **(because)**

12. Connect each pair of sentences, using the conjunction or conjunctive adverb given in brackets.

1. The weather in India is rather hot all year round. You shouldn't wear shorts or sleeveless shirts when visiting a pagoda. **(but)**

2. Lim Festival is the festival of "Quan Ho" singing. It is also space for various folk games. **(moreover)**

3. People believe that the first person who visits their home during Tet holiday may determine their fortune for the whole year. The person who sweeps the floor on the first three days of this festive occasion might sweep away the wealth. **(however)**

4. Lion dances are held when opening a new company, or connecting an activity. These dances are believed to bring good luck and prosperity and drive away evil. **(because)**

5. You come and visit a Chinese family. You should bear in mind not to give an odd number of presents. Odd numbers are considered unlucky in China. **(if; because)**

13. Rewrite the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first one.

1. Tea is cheaper than coffee.

-> Coffee

2. I adore listening to music every day.

-> I enjoy

3. The red car is more expensive than the black one.

-> The black car

4. No one in my group is more intelligent than Mary.

-> Mary.....

5. Son Tung M-TP performs the song "Chung ta khong thuoc ve nhau" very beautifully.

-> The song "Chung ta khong thuoc ve nhau"

6. A fish swims faster than a duck.

-> A duck

7. My house is bigger than your house.

-> Your house

8. I moved to Ha Noi five years ago.

-> I have

14. Rewrite the sentences, using "the past continuous" and "while" or "when".

1. We were having dinner and they were listening to the radio.

→ We were

2. She was sleeping and the fire started.

→ The fire

3. It began to rain and what were you doing?

→ What

4. The farmer started whistling and he was ploughing the field.

→ When.....

5. You came and what were they doing?

→ What.....

6. She came and what was happening?

→ What was

7. She was reading a book and the man came in.

→ The man

8. They were working in the field and the volcano erupted.

→ The volcano

9. The ship was leaving the harbor and the lava hit the town.
→ The lava
10. The headmaster was going to his car and someone hit him on the head.
→ Someone hit the headmaster

15. Complete each sentence so it means the same as the sentence above.

1. Cats cannot swim as well as dogs.
→ Dogs can swim.....
2. Minh really loves to hang out with friends.
→ Minh really enjoys
3. Playing beach games is very interesting.
→ It is
4. He uses all his free time to look after his garden.
→ He spends.....

16. Complete each sentence so it means the same as the sentence above. Use “Used to”.

1. They once started these machines by hand.
→ They used to.....
2. He doesn't get up late anymore.
→ He
3. I don't listen to the radio any more.
→ I used to
4. They don't have a dog any more.
→ They used to
5. My brother doesn't serve in the army any longer.
→ My brother used to.....
6. Barbara is not as keen on travel as she used to be.
→ Barbara used to
7. When he was young, he usually did morning exercise in the park.
→ He used to
8. The man often spent his holiday in the mountain when he was young.
→ The man used to.....
9. Before he had the car, he went to work by bike.
→ Before he had the car, he used to
10. When I was young, I usually get up early.
→ I used to

17. Combine the two sentences to complete the sentences.

1. The building is very old. He lives there. **(where)**
.....
2. I will tell you something. You didn't know it before. **(which)**
.....
3. I'll never forget the day. I met you then. **(when)**
.....
4. It was cold. However, Tom still went swimming. **(although)**
.....
5. John is very sad. He fails the final exam. **(because)**
.....
6. He never left the house. He had been born there. **(where)**
.....
7. I met the man. He works in a bank. **(who)**
.....
8. Here are the letters. They arrived this morning. **(which)**
.....
9. My grandfather is very old. He is still young at heart. **(although)**
.....
10. Tom gets a lot of money. He works hard. **(because)**
.....

18. Combine the two sentences to complete the sentences.

1. The building is very old. He lives there. **(where)**
.....

2. I will tell you something. You didn't know it before.**(which)**
.....
3. I'll never forget the day. I met you then.**(when)**
.....
4. It was cold. However, Tom still went swimming.**(although)**
.....
5. John is very sad. He fails the final exam.**(because)**
.....
6. He never left the house. He had been born there.**(where)**
.....
7. I met the man. He works in a bank.**(who)**
.....
8. Here are the letters. They arrived this morning.**(which)**
.....
9. My grandfather is very old. He is still young at heart.**(although)**
.....
10. Tom gets a lot of money. He works hard.**(because)**

19. Rewrite the sentences

1. David had gone home before we arrived.
→ After.....
2. We had lunch then we took a look around the shops.
→ Before
3. The light had gone out before we got out of the office.
→ When
4. After she had explained everything clearly, we started our work.
→ By the time
5. My father had watered all the plants in the garden by the time my mother came home.
→ Before

20. Change the following sentences into passive voice.

1. They can't make tea with cold water.
→
2. The chief engineer was instructing all the workers of the plant.
→
3. Somebody has taken some of my books away.
→
4. They will hold the meeting before May Day.
→
5. They have to repair the engine of the car.
→
6. The boys broke the window and took away some pictures.
→
7. People spend a lot of money on advertising everyday.
→
8. They may use this room for the classroom.
→
9. The teacher is going to tell a story.
→
10. Mary is cutting the cake with a sharp knife.
→
11. The children looked at the women with a red hat.
→
12. They have provided the victims with food and clothing.
→
13. The teacher explains the lesson.
→
14. Mrs Green is cooking the food in the kitchen.
→

15. The doctor examined the patients.
→
16. These boys made that noise.
→
17. People speak English all over the world.
→
18. He gave him back the money last Sunday.
→
19. I can't do these exercises quickly.
→
20. She had finished the report by noon.

21. Complete each sentence so it means the same as the sentence above.

1. He got in through the window. I saw him.
→ I saw.....
2. She made herself sick. She had worked very hard.
→ She had worked so.....
3. The traffic was bad. However, I arrived on time.
→ Though.....
4. We were late. We missed the first act of the play.
→ We were so
5. They're the birds. I fed them this morning.
→ They're the birds that.....
6. I don't know many English words
→ I wish
7. "Do you have many friends?"
→ She asked me
8. We don't have a lot of money, so we don't buy a lot of new books.
→ If we.....
9. Learning English is not easy.
→ It is
10. "Would you like to come to my birthday party, Sarah?" asked John.
→ John invited.....

22. Complete the sentences, using the given words in the brackets.

1. The film was boring. She decided to go home early. (so... .that)
.....
2. It is a difficult question. All the students can't answer it. (such....that)
.....
3. Mr. Brown wants to use solar energy. Mr. Brown does not have enough money to buy necessary equipment. (but)
.....
4. Shakespeare died in 1616. He had written more than 37 plays before then. (by the time)
.....
5. Douglas fell off his bicycle last week. He has had to use crutches to walk. (since)
.....
6. I turned off the lights. After that, I left the room. (before)
.....
7. The other passengers will get on the bus soon. Then we'll leave. (as soon as)
.....
8. Susan sometimes feels nervous. Then she chews her nails. (whenever)
.....
9. The frying pan caught on fire. I was making dinner at that time. (while)
.....
10. I won't return my book to the library. I'll finish my research project first. (until)
.....

23. Put into the reported speech.

1. Tom said: "I want to buy a pocket calculator for my father."
.....
2. She said; "I once spent a summer in this village."
.....

3. The nurse said: "The patient in this room didn't obey your orders, doctor."
4. They said to me : "You taught us English last year."
5. Mr. Brown said : "Our trip cost us two thousand dollars."
6. He said to her : " I can't find my hat anywhere in this room."
7. My father said to them : "My secretary is going to finish this job."
8. They said : "We can't meet you here either today or tomorrow."
9. My mother said : "I think it won't rain tomorrow."
10. He said: "Your car has been stolen, John."
11. They said : "The river is rising early this year."
12. He said : "I'll expect her to come soon."
13. Our teacher said : "World War II broke out in 1939."
14. The students said : "We'll be sitting for our next exam next Monday."
15. He said : "I'm going to finish this work."

24. Rewrite the following sentences using questions words + to-infinitives.

1. We don't know where we should put the sofa.

2. The rules didn't specify who I should speak to in case of an emergency.

3. Mai wondered how she could ride the scooter.

4. Let us decide when we should start the project.

5. Could you tell me where I can find a good hotel?

6. We must find out what we are to do next.

7. A good dictionary tells you how you should pronounce the words.

8. We are not sure who we will meet at the entrance.

9. I cant remember when I have to turn off the oven.

10. Do you know what you should look for?

25. Complete the directed speech sentences.

1. Mr. Smith said: "Where are you going on your vacation this year?"
→ Mr. Smith asked
2. She said: "Did the mechanics finish repairing your car?"
→ She asked.....
3. She said: "Why has David been looking so miserable lately?"
→ She asked.....
4. I asked my friend: "Was anyone hurt in the car accident last month?"
→ He asked my friend
5. She asked me: "How old are you now ?"
→ She asked me

6. He said to her: "Have you been to town today ?"
→ She asked her
7. John said: "How long does it take you to get to London, Mary?"
→ John asked Mary
8. The policeman asked the little girl: "What's your name?"
→ The policeman asked the little girl
9. Mr. Green said to his secretary: "Who did you talk to a few minutes ago?"
→ Mr. Green asked his secretary
10. Paul said: "Can you swim, Mary?"
→ Paul asked Mary
11. He said: "Where can I find her in this town?"
→ He asked
12. She asked her son: "Do you know which is the cup you used ?"
→ She asked her son
13. Helen said: "What did you say, Jack ?"
→ Helen asked Jack
14. She said to him: "Why didn't you get up early this morning ?"
→ She asked him
15. He said: "Will it rain tonight ?"
→ He asked
16. "Every weekend, the astronauts can have private video-conferences with their families on the Earth," Dr. Nelson said.
→ Dr. Nelson said
17. "Have the astronauts ever forgotten anything from the Earth?" Nick asked his teacher.
→ Nick asked his teacher
18. "The astronauts on the ISS use a 3-D printer on board to print certain objects," the teacher answered Nick.
→ The teacher told Nick
19. "Where can we look for life?" Nga asked Dr. Nelson .
→ Nga asked Dr. Nelson
20. "Ganymede, the largest moon of Jupiter, has a large salt water ocean," the teacher said.
→ The teacher said

26. Put these sentences into the reported speech.

1. He said to her, "You are my friend."
.....
2. Johnny said to his mother, "I don't know how to do this exercise."
.....
3. "Don't come back before one o'clock", advised my brother.
.....
4. "Cook it in butter", Mrs Brown said to her daughter.
.....
5. The pupils said "Teacher, give us better marks, please."
.....
6. My friend said, "Are you going to leave tomorrow?"
.....
7. "Have you done your homework?", said my mother.
.....
8. I asked Bill, "What time did you go to bed last night?"
.....
9. Paul said, "I must go home now."
.....
10. "There is an accident", said the policeman.
.....
11. "We are waiting for the school bus", said the children.
.....
12. "Must you go now?" said Mr Brown.
.....

13. "Are you going to visit your aunt tomorrow?" asked Tom.
.....
14. "Listen to me and don't make a noise," said the teacher to his students.
.....
15. "Tired of eating fish", said Mary to Helen.
.....
16. "The sun always rises in the east," said Peter.
.....
17. "I didn't steal your fur coat yesterday," said Samny to Jean.
.....
18. "You must do your homework everyday", said Miss Lan to us.
.....
19. "Will we read the story?", Bill asked his teacher.
.....
20. "I don't know where Alice is," said Vicky.
.....
21. Mary asked me "Can you tell me why you are so sad?"
.....
22. "Will you please find out when he last wrote to me?" Jane said to her friend.
.....
23. "You must decide what you want to do", she said to her daughter.

27. Rewrite the following sentences.

1. "Can you photocopy this report for me?" Tom said to Linda.
→ Tom asked Linda
2. "Don't wait for me", she said to her friend.
→ She told her friend
3. My daughter loves to listen to my story before going to bed.
→ My daughter enjoys
4. Jessica was my classmate, but now she studies in another school.
→ Jessica used.....
5. "You should study harder this semester", the teacher said.
→ The teacher said.....

Exercise 1. Rewrite the sentences, using the given words.

1. What is the price of this watch?
⇒ How much.....?
2. What is the price of these beautiful scarves?
⇒ How much.....?
3. Can you tell me the way to Dong Nai Post office?
⇒ Can you tell me
4. Can you tell me the way to the station?
⇒ Can you tell me
5. They are fast typists.
⇒ They
6. Peter is a hard worker.
⇒ Peter
7. There are no bottles on the shelf.
⇒ There aren't.....
8. We have no time to prepare the speech.
⇒ We don't have

Exercise 2. Rewrite the sentences, using the given words.

1. Tim is better at English than Susan.
→ Susan isn't.....
2. We spent five hours getting to London.
→ It took.....
3. Listening to music gives him pleasure.
→ He enjoys
4. She is more beautiful than her younger sister.

- Her
5. They began studying English in 2004.
- They
6. You ought to go to school now.
- It's time
7. My father works as a teacher at a high school.
- My
8. We can't afford to buy the car.
- The car is
9. People say that he beats his wife.
- He is said to
10. She bought that house in 1990.
- She has

Exercise 3. Complete the second sentence in each pair so that it has similar meaning to the first sentence.

1. People invented the wheel thousands of years ago.
→ The wheel
2. My father waters these flower every morning.
→ These flowers.....
3. People use computers all over the world.
→ Computers.....
4. Are they building a statue of Chu Van An?
→ Is ?
5. John invited Fiona to his birthday party last night.
→ Fiona
6. They keep many ancient things in museums.
→ Many ancient things.....
7. Do four busy streets surround the Temple of Literature?
→ Is ?
8. People make many famous films in Hollywood.
→ Many famous films.....
9. Her mother is preparing the dinner in the kitchen.
→ The dinner.....
10. I do all my homework on my computer.
→ All my homework.....

Exercise 4. Turn these sentences into passive voice.

1. The bill includes service.
→
2. Nana chooses the book carefully.
→
3. We don't use that room.
→
4. They grow fruits in California.
→
5. These jeans attract many young people.
→
6. People don't use this road very often.
→
7. I wash the dishes in the evening.
→

Exercise 5. Turn these sentences into passive voice.

1. She bought the watch at the shop.
→
2. They built the house in 1950.

-
3. We did the exercises last week.
→
4. The pupils sent the letters the day before yesterday.
→
5. He learned the lesson two weeks ago.
→
6. Nguyen Du wrote Kieu story.
→
7. She made the cake last night.
→
8. Daisy washed the dishes last night.
→

Exercise 6. Complete the second sentence in each pair so that it has similar meaning to the first sentence.

1. A lot of people use cell phones.
→ Cell phones
2. Miss. Diep hasn't taught us since the last semester.
→ We.....
3. Mr. Vinh teaches our English lessons.
→ Our English lessons
4. A student is doing that experiment.
→ That experiment.....
5. Our teachers give us a free period this Saturday to prepare the festival.
→ We.....
6. Did you buy this dictionary two weeks ago?
→ Was
7. We should clean our teeth twice a day.
→ Our teeth
8. Alan's knowledge about science and technology doesn't impress me.
→ I.....
9. Her father drive all of us to school every day.
→ All of us
10. They are going to build a new school here next year.
→ A new school

Exercise 7. Rewrite the sentences, active or passive.

1. The store was opened in 1932 by Jack.
Jack
2. Has anyone told you about it yet?
Have you.....
3. Somebody accused him of stealing the money.
He.....
4. People are going to build a bridge over my house.
A bridge
5. They built many buildings to commemorate Uncle Ho's birthday.
Many buildings
6. They will ask us all several questions.
We shall
7. They must observe the rules of the games carefully.
The rules
8. They were building a new stadium when I arrived.
A new stadium
9. Newspaper are sold everywhere in the city.
People
10. Did the woman buy those vegetables?
Were those vegetables

Exercise 8. Complete the second sentences so that it has a similar meaning to the first.

1. I usually stayed up late to watch football matches last year, but now I don't.
→ I used.....
2. There were some trees in the field, but now there aren't any.
→ There used.....
3. Anna doesn't live with her parents any more.
→ Anna used
4. He is not a poor man any more, but he become a rich businessman.
→ He used
5. They didn't often go to the cinema every Sunday last year.
→ They didn't use
6. My hair now is much longer than that in the past.
→ In the past my hair used.....
7. I don't have time to collect stamps as when I was in primary school.
→ I used.....
8. Did you often go to the beach when you lived in Nha Trang?
→ Did you use.....
9. Mr. Hung often went to work by motorbike, but now he goes to work by bus.
→ Mr. Hung
10. There were traffic jams in this street during rush hours, but now the street become wider.
→ There.....

Exercise 9. Rewrite the following sentences in the way that their original meanings do not change.

1. Van Cao composed Viet Nam's anthem Tien Quan Ca.
→ Viet Nam's anthem Tien Quan Ca
2. Be careful or you'll hurt yourself.
→ If you are.....
3. What is the price of the bicycle?
→ How much..... ?
4. The market does not have any carrots
→ There.....
5. You're the best guitarist in the school.
→ No one.....

Exercise 10. Rewrite the following sentences in the way that their original meanings do not change.

1. Although Tom was a poor student, he studied very well.
⇒ In spite of
2. Mary could not go to school because she was sick.
⇒ Because of
3. Although the weather was bad, she went to school on time.
⇒ Despite
4. My mother told me to go to school although I was sick.
⇒ In spite of
5. Because there was a big storm, I stayed at home.
⇒ Because of
6. Tom was admitted to the university although his grades were bad.
⇒ Despite
7. Although she has a physical handicap, she has become a successful woman.
⇒ Despite
8. In spite of his good salary, Tom gave up his job.
⇒ Although
9. Though he had not finished the paper, he went to sleep.
⇒ In spite of
10. In spite of the high prices, my daughter insists on going to the movies.
⇒ Even though

Exercise 11. Rewrite the following sentences in the way that their original meanings do not change.

1. They will install solar panels on the roof of our house next week.
→ Solar panels _____
2. They will build a new school for poor children next month.
→ A new school _____
3. Will the plumber check cracks on the water pipes in two days?
→ Cracks _____
4. They sell these chemicals everywhere in my hometown.
→ These chemicals _____
5. They won't show the film on types of future energy sources next Friday.
→ The film _____
6. Some people will interview the new president on TV.
→ The new president _____
7. They will destroy the old thermal power plant at the end of this year.
→ The old thermal _____
8. They will widen the road to our village next year.
→ The road _____
9. We will be using biogas for cooking and heating at this time next month.
→ Biogas _____
10. They got the first prize at the competition.
→ The first _____

Exercise 12. Rewrite the following sentences in the way that their original meanings do not change.

1. Governments will make more regulations to reduce industrial pollution.
→ More regulations _____
2. People won't burn fossil fuels for energy in the future.
→ Fossil fuels _____
3. People will construct more wind turbines in that area to produce electricity.
→ More wind turbines _____
4. Shall we reduce our electricity bills to 20% in five months?
→ Will our electricity _____
5. People will develop alternative sources of energy.
→ Alternative sources _____
6. We will be providing electricity this time next year.
→ Electricity _____
7. Scientists will find solutions to reduce pollution in our city.
→ Solutions _____
8. They will increase the tax on petrol to 15% next September.
→ The tax _____
9. With that device people will change the wave energy into electricity.
→ With that device the wave energy _____
10. We shall replace ordinary 100- watt light bulbs with energy- saving ones.
→ Ordinary _____

Exercise 13. Rewrite the following sentences in the way that their original meanings do not change.

1. We will use renewable energy in the future.
Renewable energy _____
2. This is our school.
This school is _____
3. What is the distance between Vinh and Ha Noi city?
How _____
4. I often walked to school when I was a student.
I used _____
5. Although they are short, they still love playing sports.
In spite of _____
6. They will use solar energy to protect the environment.
Solar energy _____
7. Although she eats lots of food, she is still very slim.

- In spite of** _____
8. What is the distance between Hanoi and HCM city?
How far _____
9. I find English interesting.
I am _____
10. Our roof will be fixed tomorrow.
They _____

Exercise 14. Rewrite the sentences so that the meaning stays the same to the first.

- The café has a lot of tables.
There _____
- Theatre programmes usually have lots of information.
There is _____
- London has more than thirty theaters.
There are _____
- The garden has a swimming pool.
There _____
- The system has both private and state schools.
There _____
- I accomplished this task in three months.
It took _____
- Jane spent three hours a week sorting out stamps.
Sorting out her stamps _____
- The pictures that are taken will have to travel for three minutes before they reach the earth.
The pictures will take _____
- She wrote the letter in thirty minutes.
It took _____
- John finished his essay in two hours.
It took _____

Exercise 15. Rewrite the following sentences, beginning as shown, so that the meaning stays the same.

- Jakarta doesn't have as many skyscrapers as Shanghai.
→ Shanghai
- You forgot to turn off the T.V last night, didn't you?
→ You didn't remember.....?
- The countryside doesn't suffer as much pollution as the city.
→ The countryside
- I think you should go to work by bike.
→ Who don't.....?
- New York has more billionaires than Tokyo.
→ Tokyo
- We will plant more trees along this street.
→ More trees.....
- Does overpopulation cause a lot of social problems in this area?
→ Overpopulation
- Is pollution the most serious problem?
→ Pollution is.....?
- A group of foreigners visited the slums last week, didn't they?
→ Did
- Mr Lam lived in the country when he was a child.
→ Mr Lam used.....

GOOD LUCK TO YOU ALL!

GV biên soạn: Trần Huỳnh Lân